

15-1672

IN THE
United States Court of Appeals
FOR THE SECOND CIRCUIT

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, *et al.*,
Plaintiffs-Appellees,

v.

AMERICAN EXPRESS COMPANY, *et al.*,
Defendants-Appellants.

(Full caption commences on inside cover)

ON APPEAL FROM THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE EASTERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

SPECIAL APPENDIX

Evan R. Chesler
Peter T. Barbur
Kevin J. Orsini
CRAVATH, SWAINE & MOORE LLP
Worldwide Plaza
825 Eighth Avenue
New York, NY 10019
(212) 474-1000

Donald L. Flexner
Philip C. Korologos
Eric J. Brenner
BOIES, SCHILLER & FLEXNER LLP
575 Lexington Avenue
Seventh Floor
New York, NY 10022
(212) 446-2300

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, STATE OF MARYLAND, STATE OF MISSOURI, STATE OF VERMONT, STATE OF UTAH, STATE OF ARIZONA, STATE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, STATE OF CONNECTICUT, STATE OF IOWA, STATE OF MICHIGAN, STATE OF OHIO, STATE OF TEXAS, STATE OF ILLINOIS, STATE OF TENNESSEE, STATE OF MONTANA, STATE OF NEBRASKA, STATE OF IDAHO, STATE OF RHODE ISLAND, *et al.*,

Plaintiffs-Appellees,

STATE OF HAWAII,

Plaintiff,

v.

AMERICAN EXPRESS COMPANY, AMERICAN EXPRESS TRAVEL
RELATED SERVICES COMPANY, INC.,

Defendants-Appellants,

MASTERCARD INTERNATIONAL INCORPORATED, VISA INC.,

Defendants,

CVS HEALTH, INC., MEIJER, INC., PUBLIX SUPER MARKETS, INC.,
RALEY'S, SUPERVALU, INC., AHOLD U.S.A., INC., ALBERTSONS LLC,
THE GREAT ATLANTIC & PACIFIC TEA COMPANY, INC., H.E. BUTT
GROCERY CO., HYVEE, INC., THE KROGER CO., SAFEWAY INC.,
WALGREEN CO., RITE-AID CORP., BI-LO LLC, HOME DEPOT USA, INC.,
7-ELEVEN, INC., ACADEMY, LTD., DBA ACADEMY SPORTS +
OUTDOORS, ALIMENTATION COUCHE-TARD INC., AMAZON.COM, INC.,
AMERICAN EAGLE OUTFITTERS, INC., ASHLEY FURNITURE
INDUSTRIES INC., BARNES & NOBLE, INC., BARNES & NOBLE
COLLEGE BOOKSELLERS, LLC, BEALL'S, INC., BEST BUY CO., INC.,
BOSCOVS, INC., BROOKSHIRE GROCERY COMPANY, BUC-EE'S LTD,
THE BUCKLE, INC., THE CHILDRENS PLACE RETAIL STORES, INC.,
COBORN'S INCORPORATED, CRACKER BARREL OLD COUNTRY STORE,
INC., D'AGOSTINO SUPERMARKETS, INC., DAVIDS BRIDAL, INC., DBD,
INC., DAVIDS BRIDAL CANADA INC., DILLARD'S, INC., DRURY HOTELS
COMPANY, LLC, EXPRESS LLC, FLEET AND FARM OF GREEN BAY,
FLEET WHOLESALE SUPPLY CO. INC., FOOT LOCKER, INC., THE GAP,
INC., HMSHOST CORPORATION, IKEA NORTH AMERICA SERVICES,
LLC, KWIK TRIP, INC., LOWE'S COMPANIES, INC., MARATHON

PETROLEUM COMPANY LP, MARTIN'S SUPER MARKETS, INC., MICHAELS STORES, INC., MILLS E-COMMERCE ENTERPRISES, INC., MILLS FLEET FARM, INC., MILLS MOTOR, INC., MILLS AUTO ENTERPRISES, INC., WILLMAR MOTORS, LLC, MILLS AUTO ENTERPRISES, INC., MILLS AUTO CENTER, INC., BRAINERD LIVELY AUTO, LLC, FLEET AND FARM OF MENOMONIE, INC., FLEET AND FARM OF MANITOWOC, INC., FLEET AND FARM OF PLYMOUTH, INC., FLEET AND FARM SUPPLY CO. OF WEST BEND, INC., FLEET AND FARM OF WAUPACA, INC., FLEET WHOLESALE SUPPLY OF FERGUS FALLS, INC., FLEET AND FARM OF ALEXANDRIA, INC., NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF CONVENIENCE STORES, NATIONAL GROCERS ASSOCIATION, NATIONAL RESTAURANT ASSOCIATION, OFFICIAL PAYMENTS CORPORATION, PACIFIC SUNWEAR OF CALIFORNIA, INC., P.C. RICHARD & SON, INC., PANDA RESTAURANT GROUP, INC., PETSMART, INC., RACETRAC PETROLEUM, INC., RECREATIONAL EQUIPMENT, INC., REPUBLIC SERVICES, INC., RETAIL INDUSTRY LEADERS ASSOCIATION, SEARS HOLDINGS CORPORATION, SPEEDWAY LLC, STEIN MART, INC., SWAROVSKI U.S. HOLDING LIMITED, WAL-MART STORES INC., WHOLE FOODS MARKET GROUP, INC., WHOLE FOODS MARKET CALIFORNIA, INC., MRS. GOOCH'S NATURAL FOOD MARKETS, INC., WHOLE FOOD COMPANY, WHOLE FOODS MARKET PACIFIC NORTHWEST, INC., WFM-WO, INC., WFM NORTHERN NEVADA, INC., WFM HAWAII, INC., WFM SOUTHERN NEVADA, INC., WHOLE FOODS MARKET, ROCKY MOUNTAIN/ SOUTHWEST, L.P., THE WILLIAM CARTER COMPANY, YUM! BRANDS, INC., SOUTHWEST AIRLINES CO.

Movants.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
Findings of Fact and Conclusions of Law	
(Dkt.619) (Feb. 19, 2015)	SPA1
Order Entering Permanent Injunction as to the American Express	
Defendants (Dkt.638) (Apr. 30, 2015)	SPA151
Memorandum re: Injunction (Dkt.639) (Apr. 30, 2015)	SPA171
Judgment (Dkt.640) (Apr. 30, 2015)	SPA197
15 U.S.C. § 1	SPA199

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
EASTERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

-----X

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, et al.,

Plaintiffs,

DECISION

-against-

10-CV-4496 (NGG) (RER)

AMERICAN EXPRESS COMPANY and
AMERICAN EXPRESS TRAVEL RELATED
SERVICES COMPANY, INC.,

Defendants.

-----X

NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS, United States District Judge.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION..... 2

FINDINGS OF FACT AND CONCLUSIONS OF LAW..... 7

I. BACKGROUND..... 7

 A. Overview of the GPCC Card Industry 8

 B. Competition and Pricing in the GPCC Card Industry 14

 C. The Non-Discrimination Provisions 21

 1. Origins of Amex’s NDPs 21

 2. The Challenged Restraints 25

II. LEGAL STANDARD 33

III. MARKET DEFINITION..... 37

 A. GPCC Card Network Services Market 39

 1. The Relevant Product Is Network Services 39

 2. Debit Network Services Are Not Reasonably Interchangeable 45

 B. Plaintiffs’ Proposed T&E Submarket 61

IV. MARKET POWER 65

 A. Market Share, Concentration, and Barriers to Entry 67

 B. Cardholder Insistence..... 71

C.	Pricing Practices.....	78
1.	Value Recapture.....	79
2.	Price Discrimination	83
3.	Merchant Pricing Premium	84
D.	Amex’s Remaining Market Power Counterarguments	90
V.	ADVERSE EFFECTS ON COMPETITION	98
A.	The NDPs Impede Horizontal Interbrand Competition	100
B.	The NDPs Block Low-Cost Business Models	107
C.	The NDPs Have Resulted in Higher Prices to Merchants and Consumers	111
D.	The NDPs Stifle Innovation.....	115
E.	Removal of the NDPs Would Benefit Merchants and Consumers	116
VI.	PRO-COMPETITIVE JUSTIFICATIONS	127
A.	Defendants’ Ability To Drive Competition	128
B.	Free-Riding	143
VII.	CONCLUSION	150

INTRODUCTION

The United States and the attorneys general of seventeen states¹ (collectively, “Plaintiffs” or the “Government”) bring this antitrust enforcement action against Visa Inc. (“Visa”), MasterCard International Incorporated (“MasterCard”), American Express Company, and American Express Travel Related Services Company, challenging each network’s anti-steering rules as anticompetitive restraints in violation of Section 1 of the Sherman Antitrust Act. (Compl. (Dkt. 1).) Visa and MasterCard entered into consent decrees with the Government, pursuant to which they voluntarily agreed to remove or revise the bulk of their challenged restraints. (See Final J. as to Defs. MasterCard Int’l Inc. & Visa Inc. (Dkt. 143).) Defendants American Express Company and American Express Travel Related Services Company

¹ Originally, the United States and eighteen states brought this action, which was filed in 2010, but Hawaii stipulated to the dismissal of its claims without prejudice before trial. (Stip. & Dismissal Without Prejudice of the Claim of the State of Hawaii (Dkt. 104).)

(collectively, “Defendants,” “American Express,” or “Amex”) elected to litigate Plaintiffs’ challenge to their anti-steering rules, which they term American Express’s Non-Discrimination Provisions (the “NDPs”). The NDPs, which are contained in both Defendants’ standard acceptance agreement and also the more customized agreements they negotiate with a select number of large merchants, prevent the roughly 3.4 million merchants who accept American Express credit and charge cards from steering customers to alternative credit card brands, such as Visa, MasterCard, and Discover.

Before turning to the contractual restraints at issue in this case, it is helpful to outline the type of behavior that Defendants’ NDPs are intended to prevent. As a general matter, steering is both pro-competitive and ubiquitous. Merchants routinely attempt to influence customers’ purchasing decisions, whether by placing a particular brand of cereal at eye level rather than on a bottom shelf, discounting last year’s fashion inventory, or offering promotions such as “buy one, get one free.” This dynamic, however, is absent in the credit card industry. Under American Express’s NDPs, a merchant may not attempt to induce or “steer” a customer to use the merchant’s preferred card network by, for example, offering a 10% discount for using a Visa card, free shipping for using a Discover card, or a free night at a hotel for using an American Express card.

Each time a customer uses a credit card, the merchant, in one way or another, pays a fee to the network services provider that facilitates the customer’s purchase. Thus, when a customer uses a Visa credit card, the merchant pays some combination of fees, commonly known as the “discount rate” or the “merchant discount rate,” for the privilege of accepting that card. When a customer uses an American Express card, the merchant similarly pays a fee. However, the merchant’s cost of accepting American Express—one of the three largest network services

providers in the country—has tended to be greater than the cost of accepting other cards, such as Visa or MasterCard. To speak in generalities that are perhaps unwarranted given the extensive trial record in this case, all else being equal, a given merchant might prefer that a customer carrying both a Visa card and an Amex card in her wallet use the Visa card, since the cost of the transaction is likely to be lower for the merchant. But pursuant to Amex's NDPs, merchants who accept American Express are not permitted to encourage customers to pay for their transactions with credit cards that cost the merchants less to accept.

As explained below, these NDPs create an environment in which there is nothing to offset credit card networks' incentives—including American Express's incentive—to charge merchants inflated prices for their services. This, in turn, results in higher costs to all consumers who purchase goods and services from these merchants.

The court does not come to its decision in this case eagerly or easily. The credit card industry is complex, and it is a critical component of commerce in the United States. General purpose credit and charge ("GPCC") card networks, including American Express, must balance the demands of two sets of customers—merchants and cardholders—in a market that is highly concentrated and distorted by a history of antitrust violations. The court recognizes that it does not possess the experience or expertise necessary to advise, much less dictate to, the firms in this industry how they must conduct their affairs as going concerns. For that reason, the court has repeatedly urged the parties in this case to negotiate a mutually agreeable settlement that appropriately balances American Express's legitimate business interests with the public's interest in robust interbrand competition. However, the parties having failed to do so, the court is left with no alternative but to discharge its duty by deciding the question before it: whether Plaintiffs have shown by the preponderance of the evidence that Amex's NDPs violate the U.S. antitrust

laws. Upon consideration of the case law in this circuit and the factual record developed at the lengthy bench trial, which was held over a seven-week period during the summer of 2014 and featured over thirty fact witnesses and four expert witnesses, the court finds that Plaintiffs have made such a showing.

As noted, credit card networks cater to the needs of two distinct sets of consumers, merchants and cardholders. Their very function is to bring these two sides together to consummate value-generating transactions. Guided by the Second Circuit's 2003 decision in United States v. Visa, 344 F.3d 229 (2d Cir. 2003), which conducted an antitrust market analysis in this industry to resolve a public enforcement action initiated by the Department of Justice under Section 1, the court agrees with Plaintiffs that this two-sided platform comprises at least two separate, yet deeply interrelated, markets: a market for card issuance, in which Amex and Discover compete with thousands of Visa- and MasterCard-issuing banks; and a network services market, in which Visa, MasterCard, Amex, and Discover compete to sell acceptance services. For the reasons described herein, the court concludes that the relevant market for its antitrust analysis in this case is the market for GPCC card network services. Notwithstanding Defendants' vigorous arguments to the contrary, the dramatic growth in customers' use of debit cards in the decade since Visa has not rendered obsolete the market definitions used in that case, nor does it warrant debit's inclusion in the relevant antitrust market. Indeed, both anecdotal merchant testimony and the testimony of Plaintiffs' economics expert presented at trial result in the court's determination that debit cards have not become reasonably interchangeable with GPCC cards or network services in the eyes of credit-accepting merchants, who are the relevant consumers in this case. Plaintiffs' attempt to define a submarket for GPCC card network services provided to merchants in travel and entertainment industries, however, is unavailing.

In reaching its decision, the court applies a full rule of reason analysis that takes stock of the voluminous evidentiary record developed at trial, and also considers and accounts for the interrelationships between the merchant and cardholder sides of the credit card platform. A few of the court's primary findings bear mentioning here. First, American Express possesses sufficient market power in the network services market to harm competition, as evidenced by its significant market share, the market's highly concentrated nature and high barriers to entry, and the insistence of Defendants' cardholder base on using their American Express cards—insistence that prevents most merchants from dropping acceptance of American Express when faced with price increases or similar conduct. The record demonstrates, in fact, that Defendants have the power to repeatedly and profitably raise their merchant prices without worrying about significant merchant attrition. In addition, Plaintiffs have proven that American Express's NDPs have caused actual anticompetitive effects on interbrand competition. By preventing merchants from steering additional charge volume to their least expensive network, for example, the NDPs short-circuit the ordinary price-setting mechanism in the network services market by removing the competitive "reward" for networks offering merchants a lower price for acceptance services. The result is an absence of price competition among American Express and its rival networks. In fact, the record shows that merchant prices have risen dramatically in the absence of merchant steering. Defendants' NDPs also have foreclosed the possibility of a current network or a new entrant to the market differentiating itself from its competitors by pursuing a lowest-cost provider strategy. Finally, the court has carefully considered American Express's proffered pro-competitive justifications and finds them to be insufficient to render the NDPs permissible under Section 1.

FINDINGS OF FACT & CONCLUSIONS OF LAW

I. BACKGROUND

This public enforcement action was tried without a jury before this court over a seven-week period between July 7, 2014, and August 18, 2014. Over the course of the proceedings the court received testimony from over thirty fact witnesses, including nearly twenty merchant witnesses representing a selection of the nation's largest retailers, airlines, and hotels; representatives from each of the three major credit card networks that compete with American Express; and an array of current and former American Express employees and executives, including the company's long-time Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, Kenneth Chenault. Plaintiffs additionally presented expert testimony from Dr. Michael Katz, a Professor of Economics at the Haas School of Business at the University of California at Berkley, and Dr. Gary Ford, a Professor Emeritus at the Kogod School of Business at American University. Professors Richard J. Gilbert, Ph.D., also of the University of California at Berkley, and B. Douglas Bernheim, Ph.D., a Professor of Economics at Stanford University, provided expert testimony on behalf of American Express. In addition to the testimony adduced at trial, which amounts to nearly 7,000 transcript pages, the court received over 1,000 exhibits into the evidentiary record. In reaching a determination as to Defendants' liability under Section 1 of the Sherman Act, the court has considered carefully the relevance of and appropriate weight to afford this evidence, as well as the credibility of the parties' respective witnesses and their testimony.²

² On the final day of testimony, August 18, 2014, the court held the evidentiary record open to allow the parties to resolve certain evidentiary disputes concerning summary evidence they wished to include in the evidentiary record pursuant to Federal Rule of Evidence 1006. (Tr. at 6757:13-6758:1, 6768:13-18.) The parties were able to resolve their disputes as to all but one of these additional exhibits, DX7828-63, which is a single slide from Dr. Bernheim's presentation that displays the corporate logos of twenty-six large companies and is captioned "Amex's Rates Have Declined for Many Merchants." (See DX7828 at 63.) Plaintiffs object to the admission of DX7828-63 as a violation of Rule 1006 and Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 26. (Aug. 27, 2014, Pls. Ltr. (Dkt. 594-1).) Because the

Based upon its measured consideration of the record just described, and upon the findings of fact and conclusions of law set forth herein pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 52(a), the court concludes that Plaintiffs have proven by a preponderance of the evidence that the challenged restraints violate Section 1 of the Sherman Act.

A. Overview of the GPCC Card Industry

Since the advent of the modern payment card industry in the 1950s, general purpose credit and charge cards, or “GPCC” cards, have become a principal means by which consumers in the United States purchase goods and services from the nation’s millions of merchants. (See PX2578A at ‘389-90³; Tr. at 3581:10-12 (Silverman/Amex).) In 2013, for example, the four dominant networks providing authorization and settlement services—Visa, American Express, MasterCard, and Discover—facilitated roughly \$2.399 trillion in credit and charge card spending at participating merchants. (See DX6576 at 8.) The typical U.S. consumer carries multiple forms of payment in his or her wallet.⁴ Alongside general purpose credit and charge cards—the focus of the court’s analysis in the this litigation—merchants also accept payment through some combination of debit cards, proprietary or private label credit or charge cards issued by individual merchants, direct Automated Clearing House or “ACH” transfers, checks, and cash,

court finds that DX7828-63 lacks any appreciable probative value, there is little cause not to admit the exhibit for the purposes of a complete appellate record. Specifically, Dr. Bernheim’s determination that the discount rates declined for the twenty-six merchants represented on DX7828-63 is premised on a methodology for calculating merchants’ effective discount rates that the court finds to be unreliable and upon which it places little, if any, weight. See infra Part IV.D. As a result, Plaintiffs suffer no prejudice from the admission of DX7828-63 to ensure a complete record on appeal.

³ Throughout this Decision, where an exhibit’s pincite is preceded by an apostrophe, the number refers to the last three digits of the control number of the particular page cited. Where the pincite is not preceded by an apostrophe, the number refers to the ordinary pagination of the exhibit.

⁴ For the purposes of this Decision, the term “merchant” will be used to refer to the wide range of entities that need to collect payments, including airlines, hotels, grocery stores, online retailers, and government agencies, among myriad others. The terms “consumer” and “customer” are used herein to refer to those individuals and entities that purchase goods and services from merchants; in other words, those who desire to make payments. However, it is important to recognize that Amex-accepting merchants and Amex cardholders are both technically “consumers” of the services provided by Defendants. Though nomenclature can be a source of unnecessary confusion in the payments context, the court has endeavored to be as clear as possible.

among other means. While each of these methods competes to some degree for share of consumers' wallets, they have one essential characteristic in common: Each payment system brings customers and merchants together in order to consummate a transaction that benefits both participants.

An introduction to the credit and charge card industry is a suitable starting point for the court's inquiry into the competitive dynamics therein. Credit cards enable cardholders to make purchases at participating merchants by accessing a line of credit extended to the cardholder by the issuer of that card. (Joint Stmt. of Undisputed Facts ("Jt. Stmt.") (Dkt. 447-1) ¶ 2.) Cardholders are invoiced for purchases typically once per month and often have a grace period during which payment may be made. (Id.) The delay between a purchase event and the cardholder's deadline for paying the bill on which that purchase appears is referred to as the "float," and it enables cardholders to temporarily defer payment on their purchases at no additional cost (i.e., without paying interest). (Tr. at 6245:1-12, 6532:6-9 (Bernheim).) A cardholder may either pay off the balance of his bill in full each month or pay it off over time while accruing interest on the balance. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 2.) Many credit card issuers impose a preset spending limit on a cardholder's outstanding credit amount, typically based on the issuer's determination of the cardholder's creditworthiness. (Id.)

Charge cards similarly allow cardholders to make payments by accessing a line of credit extended by the card issuer, but generally do not offer a revolving credit facility akin to that offered on credit cards, and instead require that the cardholder pay the balance in full each month. (Id. ¶ 3.) Some American Express cardholders, however, do have an ability to maintain a balance, or "revolve," on their Amex charge cards, blurring the distinction between Defendants' credit and charge offerings. (Tr. at 5161:5-24 (Gilbert).) Even though charge cards

typically are not paired with a line of credit, cardholders generally derive a benefit from the ability to defer payment during the float period, depending on the point during the billing cycle at which the purchase is made. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 3; Tr. at 4065:15-19 (Katz).) Unlike credit cards, charge cards typically do not have preset spending limits. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 3.)

Two specific types of credit and charge cards bear brief mention here, and will be the subject of greater discussion in later sections. First, general purpose credit cards may be issued in partnership with a merchant pursuant to a co-brand agreement. These “co-brand” cards typically bear the logos of the merchant, network, and issuing bank (where relevant), and enable cardholders to earn rewards directly from the merchant partner when purchases are made on the card. (See, e.g., Tr. at 1617:13-1618:22 (Brennan/Hilton), 3603:3-21 (Silverman/Amex).)

Prominent examples of co-brand cards include the Delta SkyMiles Credit Card issued by American Express, which processes over the American Express network; the American Airlines AAdvantage Card, which is issued by Citibank and runs on MasterCard’s network; and the Marriott Rewards Premier Credit Card, which is issued by Chase on the Visa network. Second, American Express also maintains a robust—indeed, the largest—corporate card business in the industry. (Id. at 817:2-9 (Hochschild/Discover); PX2486 at ‘053.) American Express issues corporate cards to individuals through a corporate account that has been established with their employers, allowing employers to more easily monitor employees’ business expenditures and streamline the accounting and reimbursement processes. (Tr. at 817:2-12 (Hochschild/Discover), 1226:18-1227:12 (Kimmert/Home Depot), 3963:11-24 (Katz).)

By facilitating transactions between merchants and their cardholding consumers, the general purpose credit and charge card systems that are the subject of this litigation function as “two-sided platforms.” (Id. at 3827:15-20, 3828:23-3829:3 (Katz), 5022:24-5023:22 (Gilbert).)

In a two-sided platform, a single firm or collection of firms sells different products or services to two separate yet interrelated groups of customers who, in turn, rely on the platform to intermediate some type of interaction between them. (*Id.* at 3828:23-3829:14 (Katz).) See generally David S. Evans & Richard Schmalensee, Industrial Organization of Markets with Two-Sided Platforms, 3 Competition Pol’y Int’l 150 (2007) [hereinafter Evans & Schmalensee (2007)]; Jean-Charles Rochet & Jean Tirole, Two-Sided Markets: A Progress Report, 37 RAND J. Econ. 645, 645-46 (2006) (describing basic contours of two-sided systems). Examples of such two-sided models abound: Newspapers and other advertising-based forms of media sell distinct products and services to subscribers and advertisers; shopping malls provide services jointly to retailers and shoppers; computer operating systems provide a platform for bringing together program developers and end users; and a seemingly endless array of Internet companies like eBay, OpenTable, eHarmony, and Groupon exist to facilitate some form of value-generating interaction between distinct sets of consumers. See David S. Evans & Michael Noel, Defining Antitrust Markets When Firms Operate Two-Sided Platforms, 2005 Colum. Bus. L. Rev. 667, 672-79 (2005) [hereinafter Evans & Noel (2005)]. The fundamental function of a two-sided platform is to reduce the transaction costs associated with the parties finding one another, and to thereby enable their customers to realize gains from trade or other interactions that otherwise might not occur. See Evans & Schmalensee (2007) at 151, 158.

Credit and charge cards, like all methods of payment, serve as two-sided intermediaries between merchants and their cardholding customers. American Express, for example, provides cardholders with card-payment services and merchants with card-acceptance services in order to facilitate transactions between the two. Importantly, and unlike many two-sided platforms, American Express provides these services simultaneously; for every unit of payment services

sold to the cardholder at the moment of purchase, a matching service is sold to the merchant in order to execute the transaction, and vice versa. (Tr. at 6211:3-11, 6211:23-6212:13 (Bernheim).) Thus, credit and charge card networks are also referred to as two-sided “transaction markets”—the two sides of the platform are brought together to consummate a single, simultaneous transaction, and the products provided by the platform are consumed in fixed proportions by the consumer and merchant. See Lapo Filistrucci et al., Market Definition in Two-Sided Markets: Theory and Practice (Tilburg Law Sch. Legal Studies Research Paper Series No. 09/2013) at 12, available at http://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=2240850.

The two-sided nature of the GPCC card industry necessarily affects the court’s antitrust analysis in this case. While the nature and import of these effects are addressed in greater detail where relevant, a number of observations relating to the symbiotic relationship between the two sides of the credit card platform provide context both for American Express’s separate value propositions for merchants and cardholders and the contractual restraints at issue in this litigation. A key feature of the payment network services industry, like all two-sided platforms, is that it is subject to indirect or cross-platform network effects, a phenomenon referred to in this case as the “chicken and the egg problem.” (Tr. at 820:23-821:16 (Hochschild/Discover), 4296:11-4297:10 (Chenault/Amex).) See also ABA Section of Antitrust Law, Market Definition in Antitrust: Theory and Case Studies 439-44 (2012) [hereinafter ABA, Market Definition]. Indirect network effects exist when the number of agents or the quantity of services bought on one side of a two-sided platform affects the value that an agent on the other side of the platform can realize. (Tr. at 3829:15-20 (Katz).) See ABA, Market Definition at 440-42; Evans & Schmalensee (2007) at 151-52. In this case, for example, having a credit or charge card on a

particular network like Discover is more valuable to the cardholder when there are more merchants willing to accept that card and, conversely, the value to merchants of accepting Discover cards increases with the number of cards on that network in circulation. (Tr. at 3829:21-3830:7 (Katz), 4397:2-11 (Chenault/Amex); DX4184 at ‘856.)

The GPCC industry’s susceptibility to spillover effects is closely related. In the present context, spillover refers to the phenomenon by which a cardholder’s experience at one merchant when using a particular network’s card, here an American Express card, affects that cardholder’s willingness to use the same card on the next transaction, whether at the same merchant or a different merchant. (Tr. at 4169:5-17 (Katz), 4339:7-18 (Chenault/Amex).) As with indirect network effects, spillover can be either positive or negative. For example, when a major merchant is added to Amex’s network, cardholders are more likely to use their Amex cards at other merchants in the same area. (See DX4007 at ‘928, ‘932-34 (ascribing this effect to inactive cardholders becoming active cardholders, rather than to higher spending levels among active cardholders).) American Express’s defense of the restraints in this case centers on the NDPs role in avoiding negative spillover and preserving what the company calls “welcome acceptance.” Defendants contend that if the NDPs are eliminated, a cardholder who is steered away from American Express at one merchant will be less likely to use an Amex card at the next merchant, even if that second merchant does not attempt to influence the card choice. (Tr. at 3066:4-3068:12 (Pojero/Amex), 6356:10-6357:24 (Bernheim).) See infra Part VI.A (discussing Amex’s primary pro-competitive justification for the challenged restraints).

Therefore, in order to compete effectively, networks must account for the interdependence between the demands of each side of the platform and strike a profit-maximizing balance between the two. As a result, even in a case such as this, where the court’s

analysis focuses on one side of the relevant platform (merchants), due consideration must be given to the competitive dynamics on the other side (cardholders). This is particularly true here, as merchants' demand for payment card acceptance is largely derived from consumers' demand for payment card usage. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 4; Tr. at 6628:24-6629:13 (Katz).) As explained by Defendants' economics expert, "[t]he only reason that a merchant wants to use a payment product is that a customer wants to use the product" to purchase some good or service from the merchant. (Tr. at 6217:5-12 (Bernheim).) Yet even though merchants may not have an independent demand for American Express's network services, the choice of which GPCC network is used for any given transaction is a joint decision between the merchant and consumer. Steering, as Professor Katz correctly noted, describes "the interaction between the two sides in order to make that joint decision." (Tr. at 3834:7-24, 3831:1-21 (Katz).)

B. Competition and Pricing in the GPCC Card Industry

American Express operates a business model that is materially different than that of Visa and MasterCard, its primary competitors in the credit and charge card industry. However, to understand American Express's differentiated structure, it is helpful to understand how Visa and MasterCard function. Visa and MasterCard sit at the center of a disaggregated platform that can involve as many as five distinct actors: cardholders, issuers, networks, acquirers, and merchants. Cardholders obtain their credit or charge cards from issuers, which are banks or other financial institutions that issue cards with particular features (i.e., rewards, cash back, purchase protection), set the financial terms on the cards (i.e., annual fees, interest rates, float periods), extend cardholders credit where required, and issue cardholders their bills and collect required payments. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 5.) Similarly, to accept credit cards, a merchant must have a relationship with an acquiring bank or financial institution. (Id. ¶ 6.) The acquirer is responsible both for

merchant acquisition (i.e., signing up merchants to accept particular brands of cards, providing point-of-sale technology) and for accepting card transaction data from merchants for verification and processing. (Id. ¶ 7.) The network sits as the platform’s middleman, bringing merchants and their acquirers together with cardholders and their issuers. (Tr. at 3827:23-3828:13 (Katz).) The network’s most fundamental function is to establish protocols and procedures by which issuers and acquirers capture, authorize, and settle transactions; they also establish nearly all elements of the price charged to merchants on each transaction (except for the fee charged by the acquirer/processor), provide valuable fraud protection services, and operate the infrastructure necessary to facilitate interactions between the two sides of the platform. (Id. at 3828:14-22.)

When a cardholder swipes his credit or charge card at a point-of-sale device in order to make a purchase, the transaction information is immediately sent to the merchant’s acquirer. The acquirer effectively obtains the receivable owed by the consumer arising from his purchase, and therefore has a payable obligation to the merchant. (See Jt. Stmt. ¶ 12.) The acquirer discharges this obligation by paying the merchant the funds owed on the transaction less the “merchant discount fee,” which represents the merchant’s cost of accepting payment on the credit or charge card used by the consumer. The merchant discount fee paid by the merchant generally consists of an ad valorem element—i.e., a percentage discount rate multiplied by the purchase price—but may include additional flat fees. (Id. ¶¶ 13, 15.) On the Visa and MasterCard networks, which are frequently referred to as “4-party” or “5-party” systems to reflect the number of agents involved, the merchant discount fee is primarily comprised of three elements: a percentage interchange fee, an acquirer fee, and a network fee. (Id.) As the terminology suggests, the acquirer fee is retained by the acquiring bank for services rendered to the merchant, while the network fee is paid to Visa and MasterCard as the price of facilitating the

transaction. (Id.) Like the network fee, the interchange component, which represents the bulk of the overall discount fee and is passed through to the issuing bank, is set by Visa or MasterCard. (See Tr. at 2966:8-2967:12 (Pojero/Amex); DX7295 at 4 (MasterCard Interchange Rate Programs).) Unlike American Express and Discover, as will be discussed shortly, the interchange rate charged on the Visa and MasterCard network varies along two axes: (1) the industry the merchant belongs to, and (2) the actual card product used by the cardholder. MasterCard, for example, has more than 240 different interchange rate categories, and Visa has more than 70 categories. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 16.)

By contrast, American Express operates a partially integrated “3-party” or “closed-loop” payment card system. In addition to operating its credit and charge card network, American Express also acts as the card issuer and merchant acquirer for the vast majority of transactions involving its cards. (See Tr. at 3791:4-15 (Silverman/Amex); see also Jt. Stmt. ¶ 9; Tr. at 1069:18-1070:15 (Quagliata/Amex).) Thus, in most cases, American Express maintains direct relationships with its cardholders and accepting merchants: It provides issuing services to cardholders, acquiring and processing services to merchants, and network services to both sides of the platform in order to facilitate the use and acceptance of its payment cards. The same cannot be said of Visa and MasterCard, Defendants’ largest competitors. Rather, Visa and MasterCard function exclusively as networks, providing certain core payment services but relying on banks and other financial institutions to undertake the card issuance and merchant acquisition and processing functions. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 10; Tr. at 2116:4-10 (Berry/Amex).) Visa cardholders therefore generally interact with the network through their issuing banks, the largest of which include JPMorgan Chase, Bank of America, Citibank, and Capital One (see PX1560 at 10), and merchants that accept Visa cards interface with acquirer-processors like Chase

Paymentech and First Data Corporation, rather than with Visa itself (see Tr. at 2384:19-22 (Priebe/Southwest), 2965:2-7 (Pojero/Amex)).

American Express does not always interact directly with its cardholders and merchants, however. Prior to the decision in United States v. Visa U.S.A., Inc., Visa and MasterCard maintained bylaws preventing their member banks from issuing credit cards on competing networks, like Discover and American Express.⁵ 163 F. Supp. 2d 322 (S.D.N.Y. 2001) (“Visa I”), modified, 183 F. Supp. 2d 613 (S.D.N.Y. 2001), aff’d, 344 F.3d 229 (2d Cir. 2003) (“Visa II”). After these so-called “exclusionary rules” were removed following the Department of Justice’s successful antitrust enforcement action in Visa, Amex launched its Global Network Services (“GNS”) business and began partnering with traditional issuing banks to disseminate cards through non-proprietary channels. (Tr. at 4295:6-18 (Chenault/Amex), 2995:16-20 (Pojero/Amex).) There are currently nine GNS partners issuing Amex cards, which account for roughly one percent of its total U.S. charge volume each year. (Id. at 4295:16-18, 4326:19-25 (Chenault/Amex).) Likewise, in its efforts to close its “merchant coverage gap”—American Express is accepted in approximately three million fewer merchant locations than Visa, MasterCard, and Discover—the company has increasingly relied on third-party merchant acquirers to recruit small merchants to its network. (Id. at 2845:17-2850:2 (Pojero/Amex) (discussing American Express’s External Sales Agent, OnePoint, and OptBlue initiatives).) See also infra Part IV.D. Discover, the fourth and final significant competitor in this market, has

⁵ At the time of the Visa litigation, both Visa and MasterCard were organized as “open, joint venture associations with members (primarily banks) that issue[d] payment cards, acquire[d] merchants who accept payment cards, or both.” Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 332. For example, in return for the right to issue Visa cards and acquire Visa transactions from merchants, member financial institutions agreed to follow Visa’s bylaws and operating regulations, including its Exclusionary Rules. (Id.) Accordingly, the court occasionally refers to these ventures as the “bank associations” throughout this Decision. Visa’s and MasterCard’s corporate structures changed in 2008 and 2006, respectively, when initial public offerings “converted each from a consortium of competitor banks into single-entity, publicly traded companies with no bank governance.” See In re Payment Card Interchange Fee & Merch. Disc. Antitrust Litig., 986 F. Supp. 2d 207, 212 (E.D.N.Y. 2013).

pursued a hybrid model; in addition to operating its network, Discover issues its own card products but relies on third-party acquirers and processors to service the merchant side of the platform. (See Tr. at 812:21-814:9, 815:12-24, 824:7-825:7 (Hochschild/Discover).)

American Express's merchant pricing structure further differentiates its model from those of Visa, MasterCard, and Discover. Whereas the discount rates applied to purchases on Visa or MasterCard products vary depending on the type of card used—i.e., high-rewards cards are subject to higher interchange rates and thus cost merchants more to accept—American Express charges a single discount rate for all Amex credit and charge products, in addition to certain flat fees charged on a per transaction basis. (See Jt. Stmt. ¶ 16; Tr. at 2132:14-19 (Berry/Amex), 2566:16-25 (Funda/Amex), 2978:6-2979:19 (Pojero/Amex); see also DX7295.) Accordingly, the discount rate merchants are charged by American Express for purchases made on the high-rewards Platinum Card, the “bedrock of [Amex’s] brand,” is the same as for purchases made on its cards with less generous rewards, like the Green Card or EveryDay Credit Card. (Tr. at 2566:11-20 (Funda/Amex), 3112:9-20 (Pojero/Amex), 3602:5 (Silverman/Amex).) Like its competitors, American Express strives to maintain “pricing integrity” within industry groups, such as airlines, lodging, or gas stations. To that end, American Express sets a pricing table for each merchant segment that contains a “headline” or “base” discount rate charged across the entire industry, often with minor variations depending on the annual charge volume of each individual merchant in that industry. (Tr. at 4684:3-4685:12, 4697:16-21 (Glenn/Amex).) However, American Express will negotiate its acceptance agreements with certain large merchants, and sometimes is required to provide monetary incentives such as signing bonuses or cooperative marketing funds in order to ensure continued acceptance by the merchant. (See id. at 4685:16-4687:3 (Glenn/Amex).) See also infra Part IV.D. These “side payments” are

credited against the merchant's headline discount rate, often on a retrospective basis, in order to calculate its "effective" discount rate.

Finally, the "spend-centric" nature of American Express's business model is unique in the industry. Unlike its competitors' "lend-centric" models, which rely on the interest charged on revolving balances to generate more than half of their revenue, the primary driver of American Express's revenue is the merchant discount fee. (See Tr. at 827:20-828:9 (Hochschild/Discover), 3534:19-3535:6 (Silverman/Amex), 4303:6-24 (Chenault/Amex).) Together with its closed-loop framework, which also is a "key differentiator" for the network vis-à-vis its competitors, Defendants' spend-centric model is integral to the company's value proposition to its merchants. (Tr. 1069:20-1070:17 (Quagliata/Amex).) American Express contends that due to its efforts to "encourage [cardholders] to maximize their spend on [Amex's] card products"—including, among other things, offering premium rewards programs, superior customer service, and other ancillary benefits to cardholders—merchants that accept American Express gain access to customers who are both "ready to spend" and who generally spend more on an annual and per transaction basis than non-cardholders. (See id. at 1061:21-1062:5 (Quagliata/Amex), 2091:12-2092:12 (Glass/Amex), 3535:25-3536:4 (Silverman/Amex), 4304:8-13 (Chenault/Amex); see also id. at 3290:3-14 (Biornstad/MasterCard); DX7238 at '375.) See also infra Part IV.C.3.

In addition to delivering higher spending customers, Amex's merchant value proposition relies on the network's ability to leverage its closed-loop infrastructure to deliver marketing and data analytics services to merchants that its competitors cannot match. (Tr. at 4305:7-4306:6 (Chenault/Amex), 4720:3-10 (Glenn/Amex).) By retaining end-to-end control of all spending data on its network, American Express is able to sell its merchants information on and analysis

of its cardholders' spending behaviors, allowing the merchant to engage in more effective targeted marketing or identify new locations for geographic expansion, among other applications. (Id. at 1072:5-1079:18 (Quagliata/Amex), 2117:2-2119:4, 2277:4-17 (Berry/Amex) (noting Amex can assist merchants in understanding their customers by providing data on spending in the merchant's own industry, as well as in other industries), 4307:8-4309:15 (Chenault/Amex), 4718:5-21, 4720:19-4721:6 (Glenn/Amex), 5530:10-5531:21 (Landau/DryBar); see also, e.g., DX7598 at '015.) The closed-loop system also allows American Express to provide merchants and cardholders with advanced fraud management services. (Tr. at 4306:7-17 (Chenault/Amex), 4933:22-4934:6 (Glenn/Amex).) Finally, American Express provides dedicated client managers for its largest merchants (see id. at 625:12-626:24 (Quagliata/Amex)), and engages in a variety of efforts intended to promote spending at small businesses—a merchant population where the network enjoys less widespread acceptance than its competitors—including promotions like “Small Business Saturday” and “Shop Small” (id. at 5704:2-5709:23 (Gilligan/Amex)).

On the other side of the platform, American Express's cardholder value proposition centers on the suite of rewards and other benefits the company provides to encourage cardholders to use their cards for purchases at Amex-accepting merchants. These enticements commonly are offered by the issuers of general purpose credit and charge cards and may include a combination of per transaction benefits, such as “points,” cash back, or airline frequent flyer miles, as well as other membership benefits, such as airport lounge access, purchase protection, or rental car insurance. Cardholders enrolled in American Express's Membership Rewards program, for example, receive Membership Rewards points for purchases made on their Amex cards, and may then redeem those points with Amex or one of its redemption partners for merchandise, gift

cards, frequent flyer miles, statement credits, or other goods and services. (Tr. at 3548:13-3549:22 (Silverman/Amex), 4298:20-4300:13 (Chenault/Amex).) When offered on Visa or MasterCard products, these rewards are generally funded through the interchange fee paid by the merchant that is passed through to the issuing bank. (See Tr. at 4040:21-24 (Katz).) As a general matter, Visa and MasterCard products that tend to have rich rewards packages also tend to carry higher interchange rates, which explains why it is more expensive for merchants to accept high-rewards Visa and MasterCard cards when compared to more basic cards on the same networks. See *infra* Part IV.D (discussing, among other things, Visa's and MasterCard's introduction of premium interchange categories). In addition to its rewards programs, American Express also offers its cardholders what it believes to be superior customer service, fraud protection, and purchase and return protection, among other benefits. (Tr. at 3610:1-16 (Silverman/Amex), 4296:11-4297:10, 4309:20-4310:2 (Chenault/Amex).)

C. The Non-Discrimination Provisions

The purpose and effect of American Express's NDPs, as well as the vigor with which the company defends them, cannot be fully appreciated without an understanding of their historical context.

1. Origins of Amex's NDPs

American Express entered the payment cards industry in 1958, offering charge cards for use primarily at travel and entertainment, or "T&E," merchants. (Tr. at 4327:21-4328:6 (Chenault/Amex).) Intended to cater to the needs of business travelers, American Express's early charge cards competed with other niche payment systems offered by Diners Club and Carte Blanche. (*Id.* at 4328:16-4329:10 (Chenault/Amex).) Following the entry of Visa and MasterCard into this market in the mid-1960s, American Express undertook a concerted effort to

shift its payments business from a T&E-centric enterprise to a general purpose credit and charge card network similar to those offered by the bank associations (Visa and MasterCard). For instance, at the urging of its current Chief Executive Officer, Kenneth Chenault, and later under his leadership, Amex endeavored to expand its acceptance network to include so-called “everyday spend” merchants like gas stations, supermarkets, and pharmacies, with an aim toward increasing its cards’ relevance to consumers’ everyday spending needs. (Id. at 4394:25-4395:5 (Chenault/Amex).) Amex additionally took steps during the late 1980s and early 1990s to improve its value propositions to both merchants and cardholders by, for example, introducing what would become the company’s touted Membership Rewards program and developing new technology to better leverage its closed-loop network in service of its merchants. (Id. at 4333:18-4334:10, 4336:17-4337:18 (Chenault/Amex).) As a result of these efforts, Amex’s share of credit and charge card spending in the United States rose to about 25% by 1990. (See DX7828 at 50; Tr. at 5154:7-10 (Gilbert).)

Beginning in the late 1980s, however, Visa and MasterCard took a number of steps intended to curtail American Express’s efforts to move into non-T&E merchant segments, which had traditionally been the bankcards’ “bread and butter.” (See PX0132 at ‘867; Tr. at 3312:24-3313:6 (Morgan/Visa).) First, the bank associations adopted the so-called exclusionary rules, which prevented member institutions from issuing card products on either American Express’s or Discover’s networks. These rules were later found to violate the Sherman Act in Visa, and were removed in 2004. (See Tr. at 859:21-860:4 (Hochschild/Discover)). Second, and more importantly for the purpose of this litigation, Visa and MasterCard ran a number of marketing campaigns that highlighted American Express’s perceived and actual competitive disadvantages in the marketplace—specifically, Amex’s smaller merchant acceptance network, consumers’

resulting perceptions of the utility and value of Amex's card products, and the network's significantly higher discount rates to merchants. (See id. at 3372:2-3373:12 (Morgan/Visa); PX0132 at '930.) Visa, for example, sought to encourage consumer preference for its credit cards and steer transactions away from its competitors through several advertising campaigns, including the "It's Everywhere You Want To Be" and "We Prefer Visa" initiatives. (Tr. at 3306:4-3307:11, 3321:21-3324:17, 3409:15-23 (Morgan/Visa); PX0082; PX0133 at '985-86; see also Tr. at 3318:16-3320:24 (Morgan/Visa).) These efforts were remarkably effective. The "We Prefer Visa" campaign, for example, appears to have contributed to a 25-45% shift in card volume from American Express to Visa (see PX0133 at '986; see also Tr. at 4351:3-6 (Chenault/Amex)), and Amex's overall share of GPCC charge volume dipped to approximately 20% by 1995. (Tr. at 5154:7-15 (Gilbert), 6305:18-6306:6 (Bernheim); DX7828 at 50.)

American Express responded to its competitors' efforts to induce merchants to steer volume away from its network by tightening the contractual restraints at issue in this litigation, its so-called Non-Discrimination Provisions ("NDPs"). Formulated to control the manner in which merchants treat Amex cardholders at the point of sale, limitations on merchant steering have existed in Amex's card acceptance agreements in one form or another since the 1950s. (See PX1389 at 3 (1959 Agreement); DX0020 at '696 (1977 Agreement); Tr. at 4328:7-10 (Chenault/Amex).) In the late 1980s and early 1990s, however, Amex bolstered its NDPs to ensure that merchants could not state a preference for any GPCC card network other than American Express, and simultaneously intensified its efforts to enforce these provisions when it detected merchant steering. (Compare PX1389 at '189 (sample 1992 agreement), '293 (sample 1998 agreement), with PX1389 at '155 (sample 1989 agreement containing less restrictive NDPs); see also PX1103 at '353, '396-97 (discussing Amex's response to "We Prefer Visa"

campaign); Tr. at 4490:13-4491:18 (Chenault/Amex).) Indeed, American Express's CEO acknowledged at trial that the NDPs were revised to preclude the use of preference language favoring other issuers or networks after the company's experience during the "We Prefer Visa" campaign. (Tr. 4492:16-4493:14, 4531:17-4532:11 (Chenault/Amex).)

American Express's response is hardly surprising. As a number of American Express executives testified, a cardholder's experience at the point of sale when using an Amex card is a critical point of contact between American Express and the cardholder. (See Tr. at 3066:4-3067:13 (Pojero/Amex), 4953:8-23 (Hayes/Amex); see also id. at 884:11-20 (Hochschild/Discover), 6357:20-24 (Bernheim) (noting this is a critical touchpoint for the network "that affects consumers' perceptions of Amex and Amex isn't there to control that at all, the merchant is in charge of that").) Since the entire purpose of carrying a payment card is to enable the consumer to consummate transactions with merchants, the consumer's decision to pull an American Express card from his wallet at the point of sale represents a critical "moment of truth" for the company. (Tr. at 3066:4-3067:13 (Pojero/Amex), 3573:11-15 (Silverman/Amex) ("[T]here's effectively two moments of truth for [Amex] customers . . . [o]ne is to get them to buy the card . . . [t]he second is every time they make a purchase, to get them to use the card.").) Because the NDPs represent the Defendants' attempt to control as much of that experience as possible, purportedly to ensure its cardholders enjoy what the network calls "welcome acceptance," the network's decision to tighten its restraints in response to the "We Prefer Visa" campaign and similar initiatives is not tremendously surprising. (See DX0319 at '002; Tr. at 4372:8-4373:1 (Chenault/Amex).) In Amex's view, merchant steering to less expensive card networks—or "suppression," as it is referred to within American Express—endangers the cardholder's purchasing experience and therefore endangers the network itself. (See Tr. at

4477:12-20 (Chenault/Amex).) Yet, as discussed in the remainder of this Decision, Amex's efforts to ensure welcome acceptance go too far in the view of the Sherman Act—the NDPs unreasonably and unjustifiably suppress a critical avenue of interbrand competition in the relevant market.

2. The Challenged Restraints

The vast majority of American Express's 6.4 million merchant locations are bound by the company's standard card acceptance agreement, and consequently, by its standard NDPs. (Tr. at 642:18-648:3 (Quagliata/Amex).) Unless a merchant has a customized or negotiated acceptance agreement with American Express—and, notably, fewer than 1,000 merchants are in this position—the terms and conditions of merchant acceptance of Amex's credit and charge products are set forth in a form card acceptance agreement with the network. (Tr. at 636:2-639:13 (Quagliata/Amex), 2831:17-25 (Funda/Amex) (estimating Amex has fewer than 1,000 custom contracts); PX0003.) These form contracts incorporate by reference the company's Merchant Regulations and require Amex-accepting merchants to adhere to the policies and procedures found therein. (Tr. at 642:15-643:5 (Quagliata/Amex); PX0003 at 13 (section 1.b.i).) American Express's standard NDPs are located in section 3.2 of Amex's Merchant Regulations (PX0003 at 13 (section 1.b.i)), and provide that a merchant who accepts American Express credit or charge products may not:

- indicate or imply that [it] prefer[s], directly or indirectly, any Other Payment Products over [Amex's] Card,
- try to dissuade Cardmembers from using the Card,
- criticize or mischaracterize the Card or any of our services or programs,
- try to persuade or prompt Cardmembers to use any Other Payment Products or any other method of payment (e.g., payment by check),

- impose any restrictions, conditions, disadvantages or fees when the Card is accepted that are not imposed equally on all Other Payment Products, except for electronic funds transfer, or cash and check,
- engage in activities that harm [Amex's] business or the American Express Brand (or both), or
- promote any Other Payment Products (except [the merchant's] own private label card that [it] issue[s] for use solely at [the merchant's] Establishments) more actively than [it] promote[s] our Card.

(PX0002 at 16.)

Critically, section 3.2 includes two types of prohibitions that Plaintiffs expressly do not challenge under the Sherman Act, which are therefore unaffected by the court's resolution of this case. First, Plaintiffs do not challenge section 3.2 insofar as it prohibits merchants from imposing "fees" when accepting American Express cards that are not "imposed equally on all Other Payment Products," except for ACH, cash, or check. (PX0002 at 16.) Thus, the Government is expressly not seeking to allow merchants to differentially surcharge American Express cards vis-à-vis its competitors' cards (i.e., charge a premium to consumers for using an Amex card), though such steering is at issue in the multi-district litigation action against American Express that is also before this court. (See Am. Compl. (Dkt. 57) ¶ 28; see also Tr. at 5828:8-5829:14 (Gilligan/Amex); PX2754 (demonstrative) (highlighting language in the NDPs not challenged in this case).) See also In re Am. Express Anti-Steering Rules Antitrust Litig. (No. II), No. 11-MD-2221 (NGG) (RER) (E.D.N.Y.). Second, Plaintiffs are not challenging the NDPs to the extent they prohibit merchants from "mischaracteriz[ing]" the Card or "engag[ing] in activities that harm [Amex's] business or the American Express brand (or both)." (See Am. Compl. ¶ 28; see also Tr. at 5828:8-5829:14 (Gilligan/Amex); PX2754 (demonstrative).) These two carve-outs from Plaintiffs' case are discussed in greater detail in connection with the court's analysis of Amex's proposed pro-competitive justifications for the restraints. See infra Part

VI.A. For the sake of simplicity, any reference in this Decision to the NDPs or “challenged restraints” refer only to those aspects of section 3.2, or parallel provisions in Amex’s customized agreements, that Plaintiffs challenge as violations of the antitrust laws, unless otherwise noted.

As suggested above, American Express does negotiate its card acceptance agreements with certain large merchants. (See, e.g., Tr. at 684:12-16, 685:5-686:5 (Quagliata/Amex), 2831:17-2832:2 (Funda/Amex).) However, the anti-steering provisions underlying this action, which are intended to dictate merchants’ treatment of Defendants’ cards, are only rarely subject to negotiation. In fact, Amex identified only 139 merchants with agreements that contained non-standard NDPs. (See Stip. Regarding Non-Standard Card Acceptance Agreements (“Schmitt Stip.”) (Dkt. 590) ¶ 1.) And even where a merchant has negotiated non-standard NDPs into its contract with American Express, the rules still restrict nearly all forms of point-of-sale steering, including merchants’ ability to express a preference for a particular card brand. Although in the course of negotiations many of these larger merchants have requested that Amex remove its NDPs from their agreements entirely (see, e.g., Tr. at 1613:2-6 (Brennan/Hilton), 1257:25-1258:19 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 1697:13-1698:13 (Dale/Sprint)), Defendants generally grant merchants limited exceptions to the NDPs in only two contexts.

First, certain merchants, such as Sears, Crate & Barrel, Home Depot, and Hilton Hotels & Resorts, have negotiated the right to steer toward their private label or co-brand cards. (See, e.g., PX1270 at ‘152-53 (Crate & Barrel); PX1915 at ‘805-06 (Home Depot); DX7530 at ‘649 (Hilton); Tr. at 1327:3-18 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 1653:18-1655:12 (Brennan/Hilton), 2338:18-2339:22 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel).) Under its custom card acceptance agreement and non-standard NDPs, for example, Sears is permitted to steer customers to its private label card or to its co-brand card with MasterCard by having its cashiers ask every customer as they approach

the point of sale if they “could put [their purchase] on their Sears card.” (Tr. at 577:17-578:9 (Bouchard/Sears).) Southwest Airlines is similarly able to steer customers to its Rapid Rewards co-brand card with Visa by offering “\$50 off, \$100 off on the first purchase” or by offering “up to 50,000 rewards points.” (PX0332 at ‘750-51; Tr. at 2426:25-2427:11 (Priebe/Southwest).) While this type of steering is effective at shifting share to the merchants’ private label or co-brand cards (see, e.g., Tr. at 578:20-22, 2427:9-11 (Bouchard/Sears)), those merchants who have negotiated this exception nonetheless remain subject to significant restrictions on whether and how they can influence the customer’s payment choice as it relates to standard GPCC cards. Hilton, for example, is permitted under its card acceptance agreement to steer toward its co-branded cards, but it still may not disclose to customers truthful information about how its co-brand cards compare to Amex’s credit and charge products. (Id. at 1613:12-19 (Brennan/Hilton), 2426:1-3, 2426:16-24 (Priebe/Southwest).)

Second, American Express occasionally has granted certain large merchants an exception to the NDPs permitting them to engage in limited, short-term promotions with other credit card issuers or networks. (See, e.g., DX2770 at ‘009 (Dell); PX0612 at ‘403-04 (Sprint); Tr. at 1699:5-19 (Dale/Sprint); PX0650 at ‘229-30 (Enterprise); Tr. at 525:9-13, 527:12-19 (Satkowski/Enterprise).) While this exception, when granted, allows merchants to incentivize customers to shift their transactions to a less expensive network for a limited time period—such clauses typically limit promotions to three or six months in duration—certain modes of steering remain blocked, including merchants’ ability to express a preference for any brand other than American Express. (See DX2770 at ‘009 (Dell); PX0612 at ‘403-04 (Sprint).) For example, Sprint has been permitted to conduct a number of short-term promotions with Visa and MasterCard whereby it offers customers a statement credit if they sign up for Sprint’s recurring

billing program with a particular card brand; however, Sprint remains unable to tell its customers “Sprint prefers Visa” or to offer them discounts, incentives, or other benefits for paying their bill with a non-Amex card. (Tr. at 1699:17-1702:6, 1703:18-1704:5, 1705:6-9 (Dale/Sprint).) Further, a number of merchants whose card agreements contain this short-term promotion exception dispute the efficacy of such programs, given the strict time limitations imposed by American Express. (See Tr. at 579:15-580:3 (Bouchard/Sears) (testifying that the three-month limitation in Sears’s contract affects the company’s willingness to engage in such promotions as “short term promotions generally change behavior for that period, and then [it] goes back to normal”); see also id. at 405:16-24 (Robinson/Ikea), 1702:25-1703:11 (Dale/Sprint) (testifying to difference in effectiveness of long-term and short-term promotions).)

In practice, the NDPs operate to block Amex-accepting merchants from encouraging their customers to use any credit or charge card other than an American Express card, even where that card is less expensive for the merchant to accept. Steering among the various card brands could be accomplished by offering discounts or other monetary incentives to customers who pay with a particular type of card, offering non-monetary benefits for using a lower-cost card, displaying the logo of one brand more prominently than others, expressing the merchants’ preference as to which type of card it would rather accept, or posting each card’s cost of acceptance and letting customers make their own decisions as to which mode of payment they prefer. Under Defendants’ standard NDPs, however, a merchant can do none of these things. The NDPs disable merchants from attempting to influence their customers’ card choices by, among other things:

- Offering a 10% discount off the posted purchase price, free shipping, free checked bags, gift cards, or any other monetary incentive for using their Discover card;

- Providing customers a designated checkout lane, priority boarding on an airline, or any other non-monetary incentive if using a MasterCard;
- Posting a sign saying “We Prefer Discover” at the point of sale, or otherwise signaling a preference for a non-Amex payment card;
- Answering the phone by saying “Thank you for calling us, we proudly accept the Discover card” or posting a sign that says “Thank You For Using Discover”;
- Posting a sign that discloses the merchant’s actual cost of accepting each network’s cards or that compares the relative costs of acceptance across card brands, even if such information is accurate and truthful;
- Asking customers to “please keep in mind that credit and charge expenses are some of our highest costs”;
- Informing customers that it costs more for the merchant to accept American Express than it does other card brands, even if the statement is true; or
- Inviting customers to inquire or answering a customer’s inquiry into its credit card costs, or in any way signaling that the merchant’s retail prices might be lower if it were better able to control its credit card costs.

(See Tr. at 648:24-658:9, 667:17-691:15, 785:11-19, 792:2-796:19 (Quagliata/Amex); PX2620-2631 (demonstrative exhibits showing signage that would be prohibited by NDPs).) Importantly, the NDPs inhibit steering even when American Express is not mentioned, resulting in the restraints’ effects being inflicted across the GPCC industry. For instance, a merchant may not post a sign saying “Please Use Your Discover Card, Visa Is More Expensive To Accept” or offer a discount to MasterCard cardholders if they use a Visa card instead. (Tr. at 671:7-672:21, 792:2-5 (Quagliata/Amex); PX2626; PX2627.)

American Express’s NDPs do not, however, restrict merchants from steering customers to cash, check, or ACH transfers. (PX0002 at 16.) For example, gas stations are able to offer customers a lower price per gallon of gasoline if the customer pays in cash as opposed to using a credit or charge card. Merchants may also steer their customers to debit cards to an extent. This freedom is a product of the Durbin Amendment to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and

Consumer Protection Act of 2010, Pub. L. No. 111-203, § 1075, 124 Stat. 1376, 2068 (codified in relevant part at 15 U.S.C. § 1693o-2), and its enabling regulations, 12 C.F.R. § 235, which provide that merchants are legally entitled to offer discounts or other in-kind incentives to encourage their customers to use a debit card, provided that the merchant does not differentiate between card issuers or the various debit networks. See 15 U.S.C. § 1693o-2(b). Such steering has been referred to as “untargeted” in the course of this litigation, and will be revisited in greater detail in connection with the parties’ arguments concerning market definition and the efficacy of merchant steering generally. (See Tr. at 3866:1-23 (Katz).)

American Express actively monitors for non-compliance with the NDPs and vigorously enforces the restraints where steering or “suppression” is found to have occurred. Among its large merchants, such monitoring is accomplished through the oversight of the merchant’s client manager at American Express, random on-site visits, and reports from cardholders. (Tr. at 4786:11-4787:1 (Glenn/Amex).) Similarly, Amex monitors smaller, unmanaged merchants’ compliance with the NDPs through cardholder complaints and by monitoring the merchants’ charge volume. (Id. at 4789:1-16 (Glenn/Amex) (noting that when a small merchant’s volume falls precipitously, the company believes the merchant has gone out of business, has stopped accepting Amex, or is suppressing its card).) When the company identifies a situation in which a merchant is believed to be steering, it will raise the issue through the merchant’s assigned client manager or through its small merchant team, and, if the merchant does not voluntarily agree to cease encouraging customers to pay with a product other than American Express, the company will take remedial action up to and including termination of the merchant’s card acceptance agreement with the network. (Id. at 4787:2-11, 4789:17-4790:5 (Glenn/Amex), 4491:6-16, 4514:14-19 (Chenault/Amex) (confirming that Amex terminated merchants for steering under

NDPs); see also PX1103 at ‘398-412 (guidance document concerning official responses to steering).)

For example, in the early 2000s, Travelocity entered into a promotion agreement with MasterCard whereby in exchange for significant financial remuneration from the network, the online travel agency agreed to communicate to customers on its website that MasterCard was its preferred form of payment. (See Tr. at 3245:14-3246:4 (Biornstad/MasterCard).) When American Express learned of this preference relationship in or about June 2003, the company immediately sought to enforce the NDPs and compel Travelocity to remove the offending preference language, going so far as to send Travelocity a notice that it intended to terminate the travel agency’s ability to accept American Express cards in December 2003. (See id. at 2887:4-12, 2891:8-2900:24 (Pojero/Amex); see also PX1085; PX0466.) Amex also tried to enforce its restraints against MasterCard; the company’s Chief Litigation Counsel sent a letter to MasterCard stating that Travelocity’s use of preference language pursuant to its promotion agreement with MasterCard violated American Express’s card acceptance agreements and “demand[ing] that MasterCard immediately cease and desist all such advertising and activities.” (PX0385; Tr. at 2897:1-10 (Pojero/Amex).) Travelocity ultimately capitulated, agreeing to change its website to indicate that MasterCard was the “official card” of Travelocity, rather than the preferred card. (PX0449; Tr. at 3246:16-3247:20 (Biornstad/MasterCard).) Defendants have enforced their NDPs in a similar manner at a number of other merchants to end the merchants’ use of preference language favoring Amex’s competitors.⁶

⁶ See Tr. at 2901:2-2904:18 (Pojero/Amex) (NDPs used to end a “We Prefer MasterCard” campaign by Chelsea Piers), 3332:22-3334:13 (Morgan/Visa) (Amex terminated its relationship with Steamboat Ski Area after the merchant ran a “Steamboat Prefers Visa” promotion in early 1990s); see also id. at 2906:3-2908:18 (Ravina Festival), 3334:21-3335:5 (Laura Ashley Holdings plc), 2909:13-2910:20, 4822:9-4827:2 (discussing Amex’s efforts to end preference campaigns at Zagat, CheapTickets.com, Regal Cinemas, and Liberty Travel, among others).

II. LEGAL STANDARD

Plaintiffs challenge the legality of American Express's NDPs under Section 1 of the Sherman Act, which prohibits "every contract . . . in restraint of trade or commerce among the several States." 15 U.S.C. § 1. While this statutory text might be read literally to staggeringly broad effect, as nearly every contract restrains some type of trade to some degree, the Supreme Court has repeatedly held that Section 1 is intended to "outlaw only unreasonable restraints." State Oil Co. v. Khan, 522 U.S. 3, 10 (1997); see also Leegin Creative Leather Prods., Inc. v. PSKS, Inc., 551 U.S. 877, 885 (2007). As the NDPs are contained in American Express's card acceptance agreements with its merchants—satisfying the "concerted action" element of a Section 1 violation—the court is left to determine whether the challenged contractual provisions qualify as unreasonable restraints on competition. See Geneva Pharm. Tech. Corp. v. Barr Labs. Inc., 386 F.3d 485, 506 (2d Cir. 2004) ("To prove a § 1 violation, a plaintiff must demonstrate: (1) a combination or some form of concerted action between at least two legally distinct economic entities that (2) unreasonably restrains trade.").

As non-price vertical restraints between firms at different levels of production—namely, between the network and its merchant-consumers—American Express's NDPs are properly analyzed under the rule of reason.⁷ See Continental T.V., Inc. v. GTE Sylvania Inc., 433 U.S.

⁷ Defendants' contention that the Government seeks to impose liability under a truncated rule of reason, or "quick look" analysis, is without merit. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. (Dkt. 605) at 8-10.) American Express argues that the "actual adverse effects" test relied upon by Plaintiffs is inapposite here, as it was taken from a portion of the Supreme Court's opinion in F.T.C. v. Indiana Federation of Dentists, 476 U.S. 447, 461-62 (1986), which applied a "quick look" analysis to a horizontal agreement. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 8.) See also Major League Baseball Props., Inc. v. Salvino, Inc., 542 F.3d 290, 317 (2d Cir. 2008) (discussing state of Supreme Court precedent on "quick look" analyses). Yet as the Second Circuit clarified in Todd v. Exxon Corp., 275 F.3d 191, 206-07 (2d Cir. 2001), and as the court clarifies herein, "[t]he use of anticompetitive effects to demonstrate market power . . . is not limited to 'quick look' or 'truncated' rule of reason cases," and may be used as a supplement to or in lieu of a market share approach to proving market power. Id. at 207 (2d Cir. 2001) (rejecting antitrust defendants' attempt to equate the direct means of proving anticompetitive effect under the rule of reason with a "quick look" or "truncated" rule of reason inquiry). Plaintiffs have unequivocally stated their position that the NDPs should be assessed using a full rule of reason inquiry (see Tr. at 15:18-16:2 (Opening Statement), 6783:8-13 (Closing Argument)), and the court agrees that the various complexities in this case preclude a finding that the anticompetitive effects flowing from the

36, 57-59 (1977); see also Leegin, 551 U.S. at 885-86. Yet, as Plaintiffs correctly note, the challenged restraints do not fit neatly into the standard taxonomy of federal antitrust law. Unlike most vertical distribution agreements between manufacturers/suppliers or dealers/distributors, the NDPs do not purport to restrain intrabrand competition in favor of greater interbrand competition. See, e.g., Leegin, 551 U.S. at 890-91; GTE Sylvania, 433 U.S. at 54. See also infra Part VI.A. Rather, more akin to exclusive dealing or tying arrangements⁸—though the NDPs cannot be fairly characterized as either—Amex’s anti-steering rules admittedly have the primary effect of restraining one form of interbrand competition among the GPCC card networks in favor of alternative forms of interbrand competition. This effect is limited to horizontal competition at the network level, however, as the NDPs do not purport to affect competition among the millions of Amex-accepting merchants. Given the nature of the NDPs’ effects on competition, and recognizing that “the primary purpose of the antitrust laws is to protect interbrand competition,” State Oil, 522 U.S. at 15, the court accordingly approaches its rule of reason analysis in this case with due caution and care.

The rule of reason, which is the most searching form of antitrust analysis, requires the court in its capacity as factfinder to “weigh[] all of the circumstances of a case in deciding whether a restrictive practice should be prohibited as imposing an unreasonable restraint on competition.” See GTE Sylvania, 433 U.S. at 49; see also Major League Baseball Props., Inc. v. Salvino, Inc., 542 F.3d 290, 316-17 (2d Cir. 2008). This context-specific inquiry enables the court to “form a judgment about the competitive significance of the restraint,” i.e., to determine “whether the challenged agreement is one that promotes competition or one that suppresses

NDPs are “obvious.” See Cal. Dental Ass’n v. F.T.C., 526 U.S. 756, 770-71 (1999) (noting the Supreme Court has generally applied a truncated analysis only where “an observer with even a rudimentary understanding of economics could conclude that the arrangements in question would have an anticompetitive effect on customers and markets”).

⁸ See Tr. at 4187:4-4189:18 (Katz).

competition” on the whole. Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs v. United States, 435 U.S. 679, 691-92 (1978) (“The true test of legality is whether the restraint imposed is such as merely regulates and perhaps thereby promotes competition or whether it is such as may suppress or even destroy competition.” (quoting Chi. Bd. of Trade v. United States, 246 U.S. 231, 238 (1918))); see Leegin, 551 U.S. at 886 (“In its design and function the rule [of reason] distinguishes between restraints with anticompetitive effect that are harmful to the consumer and restraints stimulating competition that are in the consumer’s best interest.”); Major League, 542 F.3d at 316-17. Factors appropriate for consideration in the course of such analysis include “specific information about the relevant business, its condition before and after the restraint was imposed, and the restraint’s history, nature, and effect.” State Oil, 522 U.S. at 10; see also Leegin, 551 U.S. at 885.

In applying a rule of reason analysis, the court utilizes a three-step burden shifting framework. Plaintiffs bear an initial burden of demonstrating that the challenged restraints have had an “adverse effect on competition as a whole in the relevant market.” Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 506-07 (emphasis removed); United States v. Am. Express Co., No. 10-CV-4496 (NGG) (RER), 2014 WL 1817427 (E.D.N.Y. May 7, 2014) (“Amex I”). Two independent avenues exist by which this burden may be discharged: directly, by “show[ing] an actual adverse effect on competition” caused by the restraint in the relevant market, such as increased prices or a reduction in output; or indirectly, by “establishing that [the defendant] had sufficient market power to cause an adverse effect on competition,” Tops Mkts., Inc. v. Quality Mkts., Inc., 142 F.3d 90, 96 (1998), and that there are “other grounds to believe that the defendant’s behavior will harm competition market-wide,” K.M.B. Warehouse Distribs., Inc. v. Walker Mfg. Co., 61 F.3d 123, 129 (2d Cir. 1995) (“This court has not made a showing of market power a prerequisite for

recovery in all § 1 cases.”). See also F.T.C. v. Ind. Fed’n of Dentists, 476 U.S. 447, 460-61 (1986); Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 509 (“If plaintiff can demonstrate an actual adverse effect on competition, such as reduced output, . . . there is no need to show market power in addition.” (citations omitted)); Todd v. Exxon Corp., 275 F.3d 191, 206-07 (2d Cir. 2001); Amex I, 2014 WL 1817427, at *6-7. Yet the Second Circuit has also recognized that, in many ways, these dual paths are two sides of the same coin. Just as an indirect market analysis represents a court’s effort to discern whether a defendant firm has the capacity to harm competition and, relatedly, whether the challenged restraint is likely to have anticompetitive effect in the relevant market, see K.M.B. Warehouse, 61 F.3d at 128-30; Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 96 (“Market power is but a ‘surrogate for detrimental effects.’” (citation omitted)), proof of actual adverse effects on competition is compelling evidence that the defendant firm does, in fact, possess sufficient power to profitably restrain competition in the relevant market, see Todd, 275 F.3d at 206 (then-Judge Sotomayor observing that actual detrimental effect “arguably is more direct evidence of market power than calculations of elusive market share figures,” and that “[i]f a plaintiff can show that a defendant’s conduct exerted an actual adverse effect on competition, this is a strong indicator of market power”); Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 98.⁹

In the event Plaintiffs are able to discharge their initial burden, the burden then shifts to Defendants “to offer evidence of the pro-competitive effects of their agreement.” See Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 507; Capital Imaging Assocs., P.C. v. Mohawk Valley Med. Assocs., Inc.,

⁹ American Express maintains its position, first articulated in its summary judgment briefing, that Plaintiffs must prove that it possessed market power in the relevant market in order to prevail under Section 1. For the same reasons set forth in Amex I, the court rejects this position as inconsistent with clear and binding precedent in this Circuit. See Amex I, 2014 WL 1817427, at *6-7. In any event, as suggested by the Second Circuit in Todd and Tops Markets, when a plaintiff has discharged his initial burden in a Section 1 case by proving that the challenged restraint caused actual detrimental effects on competition, the plaintiff implicitly has also proven that the defendant possessed sufficient antitrust market power to cause such competitive harms. See Todd, 275 F.3d at 206; Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 98. Additionally, as discussed later in this Decision, the court concludes that American Express does in fact possess antitrust market power in the relevant market. See infra Part IV.

996 F.2d 537, 543 (2d Cir. 1993) (noting defendant must “offer evidence of the pro-competitive ‘redeeming virtues’” of the challenged conduct). If Defendants are able to demonstrate such justification, the burden ultimately shifts back to Plaintiffs to prove that any “legitimate competitive benefits” proffered by Defendants could have been achieved through less restrictive means. Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 507.

III. MARKET DEFINITION

In order to determine whether Amex’s NDPs violate the Sherman Act, the court first must determine the contours of the relevant antitrust market and thereby define an appropriate context for the remainder of its analysis. See Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 496 (noting market definition is relevant regardless of whether a plaintiff intends to prove actual adverse effect or market power); Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 334-35; Carell v. Scubert Org., Inc., 104 F. Supp. 2d 236, 264 (S.D.N.Y. 2000). Antitrust markets are defined by reference to both a “product market” and a “geographic market.” AD/SAT, Div. of Skylight, Inc. v. Associated Press, 181 F.3d 216, 226 (2d Cir. 1999). Here, as the parties have agreed that the relevant geographic market is the territorial United States (see Tr. at 3859:1-6 (Katz)), the court need only determine the relevant product market.

Under the federal antitrust laws, a product market is “composed of products that have reasonable interchangeability” from the perspective of the relevant consumer with the product sold by the defendant firm. See United States v. E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co., 351 U.S. 377, 404 (1956); Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 496 (“The relevant market is defined as all products ‘reasonably interchangeable by consumers for the same purposes,’ because the ability of consumers to switch to a substitute restrains a firm’s ability to raise prices above the competitive level.” (citation omitted)); Xerox Corp. v. Media Scis., Inc., 660 F. Supp. 2d 535, 543 (S.D.N.Y.

2009) (“[P]roducts constitute part of a single product market if they are ‘reasonably interchangeable by consumers for the same purposes,’ such that there is high cross-elasticity of demand for the products.” (citation omitted)). This factual determination requires the court to be cognizant of the “commercial realities” faced by a defendant’s consumers, see Eastman Kodak Co. v. Image Technical Servs., Inc., 504 U.S. 451, 482 (1992); Brown Shoe Co. v. United States, 370 U.S. 294, 336 (1962), and to consider the various factors that might influence consumers’ choice to switch to a substitute product, including functional interchangeability, price, and quality, see E.I. du Pont de Nemours, 351 U.S. at 401-04; Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 335. By identifying the range of reasonably interchangeable substitute products, the court is able to “identify the market participants and competitive pressures that restrain an individual firm’s ability to raise prices or restrict output” and better assess the competitive dynamics in which the defendant firm and challenged restraint operate. Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 496; Balaklaw v. Lovell, 14 F.3d 793, 799 (2d Cir. 1994) (“The basic principle is that the relevant market definition must encompass the realities of competition.” (internal citation and quotation marks omitted)).

For the reasons set forth below, the court adopts the general market definition advanced by Plaintiffs’ economics expert, Dr. Michael Katz, and accordingly finds that the relevant market for the purpose of the court’s antitrust analysis in this case is the market for general purpose credit and charge card network services. Importantly, notwithstanding Defendants’ vigorous arguments to the contrary, the court declines to conclude that debit network services should be included in the relevant market. However, the court agrees with American Express that Plaintiffs have not adequately proven the existence of a cognizable submarket for GPCC card network services provided to merchants in T&E industries.

A. GPCC Card Network Services Market

Plaintiffs propose a relevant product market limited to general purpose credit and charge card network services. (See Am. Compl. ¶ 33; Tr. at 3858:14-25 (Katz).) These services include the core enabling functions provided by networks, which allow merchants to capture, authorize, and settle transactions for customers who elect to pay with their credit or charge card. American Express disputes this definition, arguing alternatively (1) that the market should be defined by reference to “transactions” so as to account for both sides of the credit card platform, and/or (2) that debit services are a reasonably interchangeable substitute for general purpose credit and charge card services and therefore should be included in the market definition. Each argument is considered, and ultimately rejected, in turn. The court finds that Plaintiffs have appropriately accounted for the two-sided features and competitive realities that affect the four major firms operating in the GPCC card network services market—as distinguished from the card issuance market—and that a practical and nuanced application of the standard tools for defining product markets establishes that Plaintiffs’ proposed definition is an appropriate underpinning for the court’s analysis in this case.

1. The Relevant Product Is Network Services

This court is not the first to have been called upon to conduct a market analysis in the credit and charge card industry, and the court does not expect that it will be the last. Nor have the two-sided features of the GPCC industry escaped judicial inquiry in prior decisions. See Visa II, 344 F.3d at 238-40. Yet, as American Express correctly notes, product markets must be defined by reference to current competitive realities. See Eastman Kodak, 504 U.S. at 482 (“[M]arket definition . . . can be determined only after a factual inquiry into the ‘commercial realities’ faced by consumers.” (citation omitted)); Todd, 275 F.3d at 199 (stating “market

definition is a deeply fact-intensive inquiry”). Thus, while prior judicial experience in this industry necessarily informs the court’s market definition analysis, it must nonetheless remain sensitive to the fact that market conditions may well have shifted during the intervening years.

In United States v. Visa, the Department of Justice brought an antitrust enforcement action against Visa and MasterCard, alleging that the bank associations’ so-called “exclusionary rules,” pursuant to which member banks were prohibited from issuing credit cards on either the American Express or Discover networks, violated federal antitrust laws. Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 327-30.¹⁰ En route to concluding that the exclusionary rules did, in fact, violate Section 1, the district court adopted the market definitions proposed by the Government’s expert economist, Dr. Michael Katz—the same expert who testified on Plaintiffs’ behalf in this case—and determined that the GPCC card industry included two separate yet complementary product markets: (1) a “general purpose card network services market” in which Visa, MasterCard, American Express, and Discover competed to sell network services to merchants, and in the associations’ case, to issuing banks; and (2) a “general purpose card market” that covered the issuance of card products by issuing banks, as well as American Express and Discover, to cardholders. Id. at 331, 334-39. With regard to the network services market, which is effectively the same product market proposed by Plaintiffs here,¹¹ the court determined that

¹⁰ The Government additionally, albeit unsuccessfully, challenged the dual governance structures of Visa and MasterCard, which permitted members of each association to sit on the Board of Directors of either Visa or MasterCard. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 378-79.

¹¹ Dr. Katz’s characterization of the relevant market at trial differed from both the definition alleged by Plaintiffs in the Amended Complaint and the definition adopted in Visa, insofar as Dr. Katz added the notation “provided to merchants” after the core product definition “general purpose credit and charge card network services.” (Compare Tr. at 3858:14-25 (Katz), with Am. Compl. ¶ 33.) Having reviewed the whole of Dr. Katz’s testimony, the court cannot conclude that by including this additional language Dr. Katz intended to depart from the product markets adopted by the district court and Second Circuit in Visa. Rather, it seems far more likely that the addition of the “provided to merchants” qualification was included by Dr. Katz as a foil against which he could define a submarket of network services provided to only T&E merchants, as opposed to all merchants. The court accordingly concludes that Plaintiffs and Dr. Katz propose that it adopt a substantively identical market as the network services market used in Visa. As the Second Circuit explained in Visa, in the network services market the four major networks

“general purpose card network services . . . constitute a product market because merchant consumers exhibit little price sensitivity and the networks provide core services that cannot reasonably be replaced by other sources.” Id. at 338-39. The Second Circuit agreed, confirming that the GPCC platform encompassed “two interrelated, but separate product markets”—namely, a card issuance market and a network services market. Visa II, 344 F.3d at 238-40 (affirming the district court’s determination that “there are no products reasonably interchangeable . . . with the network services provided by the four major brands”).

At trial in this case, American Express urged the court to depart from the decisions in Visa and to define the relevant product market in terms of “transactions,” rather than network services. (See Tr. at 5015:7-5016:16 (Gilbert), 6211:12-6216:25 (Bernheim).) As explained by Dr. Richard Gilbert, one of Defendants’ expert witnesses, a transactions-based market effectively would collapse all services provided to merchants and cardholders in the context of the GPCC card platform into a single antitrust market. (Id. at 5015:7-5016:16 (noting a market defined in terms of transactions would capture “the flow around this whole loop between consumers and merchants”).) But this takes the concept of two-sidedness too far. The goal in defining a relevant product market is not to obfuscate or confuse market realities, but rather to “recognize competition where, in fact, competition exists.” United States v. Cont’l Can Co., 378 U.S. 441, 452 (1978) (internal quotation marks omitted); Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 496. Competition in the GPCC card industry occurs on at least two distinct yet interrelated levels: (1) at the card issuance level, where American Express and Discover compete against each other and against

compete with one another to sell services to both the issuing banks and merchants. See Visa II, 344 F.3d at 239 (“[I]n the market for general purpose card network services, the four networks themselves are the sellers, and the issuers of cards and merchants are the buyers.” (emphasis removed)). In other words, like the overall GPCC platform, the network services market itself is two-sided; each network competes for the business of two separate sets of consumers. Of course, due to its large proprietary issuing business, American Express does not need to focus on the demands of the issuing banks to the same degree as Visa and MasterCard, yet it cannot wholly ignore these demands either, given its third-party issuing or GNS business.

the thousands of Visa- and MasterCard-issuing banks; and (2) at the network services level, where Visa, MasterCard, American Express, and Discover compete.¹² Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 333; see also Visa II, 344 F.3d at 237, 239. American Express itself recognizes this reality. As one executive explained at trial, Amex competes in “three businesses: we’re an issuing bank, we’re a merchant acquirer, and we’re a network.” (Tr. at 3791:8-15 (Silverman/Amex).) To conflate these separate avenues of competition into a single product market for “transactions” that is coextensive with the platform itself, as Defendants encourage, would impermissibly and unnecessarily frustrate the court’s analysis in this case. The court believes it is both necessary and appropriate to define separate product markets that reflect the competitive realities in the GPCC industry, although recognizing that these markets are inextricably linked with one another, and appreciating and accounting for the effects that flow from such a relationship. Defendants have provided the court with no reason to depart from the approach of the Second Circuit in Visa II, and the court declines to do so on its own accord by collapsing the issuance and network services markets into a single platform-wide market for transactions.

Nor is it necessary that the relevant product market be defined by reference to how American Express chooses to compete in the industry. (See Tr. at 2020:24-2021:15, 2022:5-23 (Gilbert) (noting Amex does not offer network services in isolation nor charge a “network fee”).)

As previously noted, Defendants’ “closed-loop” model entails a significant degree of vertical

¹² As the Second Circuit recognized in Visa II, a third avenue of competition occurs at the “acquiring” level among American Express and the various acquirers/processors that provide services to Visa-, MasterCard-, and Discover-accepting merchants. 344 F.3d at 237. This level of competition, however, has little bearing on the court’s analysis of Amex’s NDPs, except insofar as it affects each network’s respective merchant coverage. American Express generally does not rely on acquirers to act as intermediaries between the network and its merchants, while those competitors that do rely on acquiring banks to deal with merchants still dictate nearly all key terms of the network-merchant relationship, including interchange rates (which form the bulk of the merchant discount fee), anti-steering rules, and other conditions of acceptance. (See Tr. at 3828:13-22, 3833:17-24 (Katz).) Accordingly, as in Visa, the court finds that it is able to conduct a thorough and comprehensive analysis of the challenged restraints without extensive consideration of the acquiring market; therefore, the role and functions of acquiring banks will be addressed only where relevant, and the court will otherwise assume a direct relationship between network and merchant on the merchant side of the GPCC platform.

integration into each level of competition comprising the GPCC card platform—card issuance, network services, and merchant acquisition. Yet each constituent product market in this industry is distinct, involving different sets of rivals and the sale of separate, though interrelated, products and services to separate groups of consumers. This is evident, for example, from the fact that Visa and MasterCard offer only network services but do not issue cards or acquire merchants, and from the function in this industry of Citibank and Bank of America, which act as card issuers but not networks. That American Express has elected to compete at each of these levels by partially integrating into the issuing and acquiring businesses does not compel the court to collapse these distinct markets into a single “transactions” market to more closely resemble Amex’s chosen business strategy. See, e.g., United States v. Eastman Kodak Co., 63 F.3d 95, 98-99, 104 (2d Cir. 1995) (defining a product market for “amateur color negative photographic film,” but not considering the camera market in which Kodak also competed). Instead, the network services market is a distinct product market for purposes of antitrust analysis, and a firm’s conduct therein may be separately scrutinized under the Sherman Act, provided the court recognizes and accounts for the fact that such conduct may indirectly affect competition at another level within the GPCC platform.

Additionally, the court is aware of no authority—and Defendants have supplied none—that requires the court to define the relevant product market to encompass the entire multi-sided platform.¹³ See Times-Picayune Publ’g Co. v. United States, 345 U.S. 598, 610 (1953)

¹³ The court in National Bancard Corp. v. Visa U.S.A., Inc., 596 F. Supp. 1231 (S.D. Fla. 1984) (“NaBanco”), *aff’d*, 799 F.2d 592 (11th Cir. 1986), however, did define a relevant product market for all “payment systems,” finding that Visa’s GPCC cards were reasonably interchangeable with other credit cards, ATM cards, travelers checks, personal checks, and cash. *Id.* at 1257-58. In reaching this determination, the NaBanco court appears to have recognized some of the two-sided features of the credit card industry, though it did not expressly consider how such a structure might affect its definitional analysis. *Id.* Importantly, however, the broad market definition endorsed by NaBanco was rejected by the district court in Visa. As Judge Jones noted, “although it is literally true that . . . cash and checks compete with general purpose cards as an option for payment by consumers . . . cash and checks do not drive many of the means of competition” in the GPCC industry. Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 335-38. Relying on the qualitative

(recognizing “every newspaper is a dual trader in separate though interdependent markets” for advertisers and readers, but defining the relevant market by reference only to advertisers and noting “[t]his case concerns solely one of these markets”); Visa II, 344 F.3d at 238-40. Amex’s position that the relevant market should be defined in terms of “transactions,” rather than by reference to the various levels of competition occurring in the credit card industry, is plainly inconsistent with the Second Circuit’s holding in Visa II as well as subsequent case law in this district. See id.; see also In re Payment Card Interchange Fee & Merch. Disc. Antitrust Litig., 562 F. Supp. 2d 392, 396-97 (E.D.N.Y. 2008) (noting, in the course of denying a motion to dismiss, that “[t]he commodity in each product market is ‘Network Services’”); In re Visa Check/MasterMoney Antitrust Litig., No. 96-CV-5238 (JG), 2003 WL 1712568, at *2 (E.D.N.Y. 2003) (implicitly defining a product market around network services, rather than transactions, noting “[o]verwhelming evidence establishes that merchant demand for credit card services is distinct from merchant demand for debit card services”). Absent a compelling reason why the court in this case should depart from established precedent and instead endorse a single, unified market for “transactions” in the credit card industry, which Defendants have not provided, the court concludes that the relevant product market for purposes of its analysis of Amex’s NDPs is the market for general purpose credit and charge card network services.

Nonetheless, American Express is correct that the court must account for the two-sided features of the credit card industry in its market definition inquiry, as well as elsewhere in its antitrust analysis. As previously noted, the purpose of defining a relevant market is to identify

differences between GPCC cards and other forms of payment, the fact that Visa and MasterCard did not consider the costs of non-GPCC systems in pricing their own services, and evidence of consumer payment preferences, the Visa court ultimately concluded that “neither consumers nor the defendants view debit, cash and checks as reasonably interchangeable with credit cards.” Id. The Second Circuit agreed, Visa II, 344 F.3d at 238-40, and, given both the passage of time since the NaBanco decision and the imprecise reasoning applied by the district court in that case, this court finds little justification in NaBanco for the “transactions” definition advocated by American Express.

the competitive constraints on Defendants' business behavior, i.e., the substitute products, competitors, or other market forces that could potentially limit the anticompetitive effect of the competitive practice at issue. In the present context, the functional reality of a multi-sided platform must be taken into account, since the antitrust significance of a restraint that nominally affects conduct on only one side of the platform cannot be assessed without considering its impact on the other side of the platform. For example, a price increase imposed by a firm on only one set of consumers in a two-sided platform may appear profitable when one considers only the direct effect of that practice on demand among the targeted consumers. Yet in reality, the suppression of demand on one side of the market may, by virtue of indirect network effects, trigger a response among consumers on the other side of the platform that, on the whole, renders the practice unprofitable. See generally ABA, Market Definition at 445-52; Evans & Schmalensee (2007) at 173-75; Evans & Noel (2005) at 696-700.

As a result, rote application of the standard mechanical market definition exercises—which were developed for single-sided markets—risks significantly overstating or understating the breadth of the relevant market. While these tools remain helpful to the court's definitional analysis, they must be applied in a manner that carefully accounts for the competitive realities in multi-sided platforms. Notwithstanding the two-sidedness of the credit card industry, however, the court finds inadequate cause to depart from the approach of the Second Circuit in Visa and accordingly defines the relevant market by reference to network services, rather than transactions.

2. Debit Network Services Are Not Reasonably Interchangeable

The evidence presented at trial also established that the relevant product market includes only general purpose credit and charge card network services, and does not extend to debit card

network services. Contrary to American Express's position at trial, the significant rise in spending among U.S. consumers on debit cards over the past decade has not rendered obsolete the determination in Visa that debit cards and GPCC cards, as well as their associated acceptance services, belong to separate antitrust markets. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 335-39; Visa II, 344 F.3d at 269 (noting "there are no products reasonably interchangeable . . . with the network services provided by the four major brands"). Exclusion of debit from the market is similarly consistent with American Express's public statements and litigation positions prior to initiation of this lawsuit.¹⁴

Together with the thorough and convincing price sensitivity analysis conducted by Dr. Katz, the record developed at trial regarding the competitive realities in this marketplace—including the limited substitutability of credit and debit services from the merchant's perspective, the various functional differences between the products, and empirical evidence suggesting low cross-elasticity of demand between the products—demonstrates that credit and debit have not become reasonably interchangeable in the decade since Visa. Both categories of evidence are discussed in turn below. Ultimately, there is no indication that merchants—the "relevant consumer" for defining the relevant product market in this case—historically have been or would be inclined to switch to debit network services (i.e., drop acceptance of credit cards) in response to rising prices in the GPCC card network services market, or that such substitution, if it did occur, would be sufficient to temper an exercise of market power therein.

¹⁴ For example, prior to 2010, American Express consistently and repeatedly represented to courts, federal agencies, and its investors that it did not compete with debit card networks because of the limited substitutability between credit and debit. (See PX1408 at 22 (Amex 2009 Form 10-K) (noting "[t]he ability to substitute debit cards for credit and charge cards is limited"); PX0106 ¶¶ 72, 152 (Compl., Am. Express Travel Related Servs. Co. v. Visa U.S.A., Inc., No. 04-CV-8967 (BSG) (DFE) (S.D.N.Y. Nov. 15, 2004) (ECF No. 1)); PX0254 at '641 (2005 presentation to Federal Reserve); PX0004 at '046 (2007 presentation to General Accountability Office noting "[w]e consider our market to be [GPCC] cards; debit is a different market"); see also PX2072 ¶ 200 (Defendants' expert, Dr. Gilbert, endorsing a market of "general-purpose credit and charge cards" in 2008); Tr. at 5160:14-5164:2 (Gilbert).)

a. *Dr. Katz's Price Sensitivity Analysis*

In determining that the relevant market includes only general purpose credit and charge card network services, Dr. Katz applied the price sensitivity inquiry outlined in the Department of Justice and Federal Trade Commission Horizontal Merger Guidelines, which has been used routinely by courts in the Second Circuit as a means of applying the reasonable interchangeability standard. See U.S. Dep't of Justice & Fed. Trade Comm'n, Horizontal Merger Guidelines § 4.11 (2010) ("Merger Guidelines"); see also Todd, 275 F.3d at 202; AD/SAT, 181 F.3d at 228-29; Emigra Grp., LLC v. Fragomen, Del Rey, Bernsen & Loewy, LLP, 612 F. Supp. 2d 330, 352 (S.D.N.Y. 2009) (recognizing the Merger Guidelines as a "tool used to define a relevant market"). Under this test, a relevant product market is properly defined if a hypothetical profit-maximizing monopolist that is the only seller of the product(s) included in the proposed market could profitably impose a small but significant and non-transitory price increase ("SSNIP")—i.e., "without losing so many sales to other products that its price became unprofitable." Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 335; see also Emigra Grp., 612 F. Supp. 2d at 352. By contrast, if buyers are able and inclined to switch away from the product(s) in numbers sufficient to render the SSNIP unprofitable, the proposed market definition likely needs to be expanded.

Recognizing that a substantial portion of the discount fees charged to merchants is passed through to card issuers in the form of interchange—or, in the case of American Express's proprietary channel, to the issuing side of its business—Dr. Katz first tested the viability of his proposed network services market using a SSNIP applied to the network or "switch" fee. (Tr. at 3914:25-3915:11 (Katz); PX2702 at 56, 59.) The network fee, which is the price charged by the network for clearing a given transaction, may be thought of as a two-sided price; that is, by offsetting the discount fees collected from merchants (via acquirers) with the amount passed

through to issuers (and ultimately to cardholders), an analyst may approximate the amount retained by the monopolist network as the price for intermediating each transaction. Using an analysis performed by American Express that compared its network business to those of Visa and MasterCard, Dr. Katz calculated that a 10% increase in the network fee charged by a monopolist with a 100% price-cost margin would have to experience a reduction in charge volume by over 9.1% in order to be unprofitable. (Tr. at 3915:12-3917:11, 3922:9-3923:23 (Katz); DX2702 at 59.) Both the size of the SSNIP and extreme margin assumed by Dr. Katz, which maximizes the “pain” to the network associated with merchant substitution away from GPCC network services, ensured a conservative application of this test. (Tr. at 3922:14-20 (Katz).)

Dr. Katz additionally considered the effect of a SSNIP on the average merchant discount rate, appreciating that merchants’ acceptance decisions are driven by the full price paid for accepting credit cards and not just the relatively small network component of that price. (Tr. at 3924:3-24 (Katz) (describing his “belt and suspenders approach” to market definition); PX2702 at 61.) Using the difference between Amex’s average discount rate and the pass-through rate it pays to third-party issuers as a conservative estimate for Amex’s gross margin, Dr. Katz calculated that a 5% SSNIP applied to the overall discount rate charged to merchants by a monopolist would be profitable unless such an increase resulted in a 23% decrease in credit and charge card volume across all merchant segments. (Tr. at 3924:3-24 (Katz).) As this inquiry focused on only the merchant side of the GPCC platform, Dr. Katz accounted for the two-sided features at play in this system by (1) assuming that the price charged to cardholders (or the rewards given) via the issuing bank remained unchanged and (2) allowing for the possibility that the SSNIP might result in cross-platform feedback effects. (Id. at 3904:2-10 (Katz) (noting his

analysis is “sensitive to the fact that we’re dealing with two-sided platforms here”); see also id. at 5177:8-5178:12 (Gilbert) (testifying that one way to adapt the hypothetical monopolist test to the two-sided context is to raise price to one side and hold the price to the other side constant).)

The profitability of a price increase in the network services market is ultimately determined by how much charge volume would be lost to other payment systems in response. Though, as a general matter, merchants and their customers jointly make the decision of which method of payment is used for any given transaction, the customer neither sees nor pays the additional cost when networks increase the price of network services to merchants (other than in the form of higher retail prices, which are paid by all consumers); thus, the customer cannot be expected to initiate substitution in the first instance. Instead, the “relevant consumer” for purposes of assessing price sensitivity in the proposed market and for identifying reasonably interchangeable substitute products is the merchant. (Tr. at 3864:21-3865:6 (Katz).) The merchant has two choices when faced with an increase in the price of network services: (1) It can attempt to steer its customers to other forms of payment to the extent permissible by law, including untargeted discounting to debit cards under the Durbin Amendment; or, and more importantly with respect to the court’s market definition analysis in this case, (2) it can defect from the network and cease accepting credit cards entirely. (Tr. at 3864:21-3865:25 (Katz).)

The court concurs in Dr. Katz’s determination that it is implausible that merchants accounting for either 9.1% or 23% of all credit and charge card volume in the United States would cease to accept credit cards in the face of either a 3 basis point (10% SSNIP to the network fee) or 13 basis point (5% SSNIP to the average discount rate) increase in the total price charged by the network, respectively. (Id. at 3922:22-3924:24 (Katz); PX2702 at 60-61; see also Tr. at 3917:23-3919:15 (Katz).) Dr. Katz further determined, and the court agrees, that

untargeted discounting to debit is unlikely to serve as a meaningful constraint on a monopolist's prices. (Tr. at 3866:3-3867:22 (Katz) (noting untargeted discounting is unlikely to be a cost-effective response to increased prices for GPCC network services due to merchants' inability to distinguish those customers who would have used debit without the offered incentive).)

However, because merchant demand for network services is derived from cardholders' desire to pay with credit and charge products, the decision to stop accepting GPCC cards is strongly influenced by the payment preferences of the merchant's customers, and their willingness to switch to other products. (See, e.g., id. at 3875:12-18 (Katz).)

In weighing whether to defect from credit and charge card acceptance in response to higher discount fees, each merchant will likely conduct its own cost-benefit analysis. A rational economic actor would be willing to drop credit card acceptance only if the incremental profit earned on transactions that could be successfully switched to other methods of payment (i.e., the cost difference between GPCC cards and the less expensive form of payment) would be greater than the losses associated with those customers who would shop elsewhere or spend less if they could not pay with a credit or charge card. (Tr. at 3867:23-3871:24 (Katz).) Because the merchant's profit margin is likely to significantly exceed the price differential between credit and other forms of payment, however, the foregone profits associated with each transaction lost to a competitor because the merchant no longer accepts credit will significantly exceed the per transaction savings realized from successfully shifting a customer to a less expensive payment method. (Id. at 3870:23-3872:5 (Katz); see also PX2702 at 35 (demonstrative); PX0111 at '826 (Amex using similar logic in convincing merchants to accept its premium rates).) As a result, and as Dr. Katz noted in his testimony, a merchant would need to lose relatively little business associated with those customers who insist on using their credit cards in order to conclude that

“the economically rational thing to d[o] is to keep accepting credit and charge cards.” (Tr. at 3871:20-24 (Katz).)

The merchant’s decision to switch away from GPCC network services, therefore, is largely driven by its estimate of its credit-insistent customers. (Id. at 3867:23-3871:24, 3875:14-3876:1, 3899:18-3901:19 (Katz); see also PX0111 at ‘826; Tr. at 3872:8-3874:12 (Katz) (Amex employs similar logic in negotiating with its merchants).) Based on American Express’s own estimates of insistence levels among its cardholder base—and the reasonable assumption that the percentage of credit-loyal customers would significantly exceed the percentage of Amex-loyal customers (see Tr. at 3896:10-3898:10 (Katz) (noting Amex cardholders may be prompted to use another GPCC card, which they likely carry given the ubiquity of Visa and MasterCard, but may not be as easily switched from GPCC cards to another form of payment entirely); PX1240 at ‘103; PX2702 at 48)—Dr. Katz concluded that it was extremely unlikely that merchant attrition would reach the thresholds necessary to render either SSNIP unprofitable (see Tr. at 3917:20-3919:15, 3922:22-3924:24 (Katz)). Similarly, data of individual customers’ spending patterns (correlated using loyalty card numbers) collected from five of the nation’s largest supermarkets and drugstores indicates that approximately 25% to 35% of customers shopping at these merchants exclusively use a GPCC card. (See DX7828 at 31; see also Tr. at 3893:2-3894:24 (Katz) (describing these customers as the “set of people that are loyal to credit, and that the merchant would be concerned about losing if it were to decide not to accept credit cards”).) This credit-insistent business would be put at risk by dropping acceptance of GPCC cards altogether. Moreover, the determination that merchant attrition is unlikely to reach levels necessary to render the SSNIPs unprofitable is confirmed by the quantitative evidence showing the response among merchants to the actual price increases imposed by American Express during its Value

Recapture initiative, see infra Part IV.C.1, as well as the effect—or rather, lack thereof—on GPCC card network services prices following the decline of debit network prices under the Durbin Amendment, see infra Part III.A.2.b.

As in Visa, however, there is limited direct quantitative evidence in the record from which the court might make a definitive calculation of either merchants’ or cardholders’ sensitivity to pricing changes in the network services market.¹⁵ Notwithstanding this difficulty, the court is persuaded by Dr. Katz’s logical and thorough analyses of likely merchant responses to a monopolist’s imposition of a SSNIP in the proposed product market, and finds it highly unlikely that merchant attrition resulting from such a move would be sufficient to render it unprofitable, given the high rates of credit-insistent spend merchants would place at risk by switching away from credit card acceptance. See Emigra Grp., 612 F. Supp. 2d at 352 (acknowledging that “[d]irect evidence of cross-elasticity of demand is rare,” and requiring courts instead “to look to a number of ‘criteria designed to focus, directly or indirectly, on cross-elasticity’” (citation omitted)). Yet the court’s determination that the applicable product market does not include debit network services is not premised solely on a formalistic implementation of the reasonable interchangeability standard, particularly in light of the complexities introduced into this analysis by the two-sided nature of the GPCC platform, and the varying levels of vertical integration that may tend to obscure market realities. See Evans & Noel (2005) at 696

¹⁵ Defendants dispute the probative value of Dr. Katz’s application of the SSNIP test in this case due to a lack of concrete quantitative data on price sensitivity among cardholders and merchants, noting instead that Dr. Katz’s analysis is merely “another way of expressing one’s judgment about the qualitative evidence.” (Tr. at 6219:18-6221:4 (Bernheim).) The court disagrees. While there is limited direct quantitative data on price sensitivity among cardholders or merchants, the court finds Dr. Katz’s analysis to be both carefully executed and persuasive. Emigra Grp., 612 F. Supp. 2d at 352 (“Direct evidence of cross-elasticity of demand is rare.”). Moreover, the more pragmatic, factual analysis Defendants favor also supports Dr. Katz’s proposed market definition. See infra Part III.A.2.b. Nor does the court find fault in Dr. Katz’s decision to begin his SSNIP analysis by assuming a test market equivalent to that adopted by the district court and Second Circuit in Visa, namely, the market for general purpose credit and charge card network services, rather than beginning with a single-brand market for American Express cards alone. (See Tr. at 4057:10-23, 4059:11-24 (Katz).)

(urging caution when defining antitrust markets in two-sided platforms, noting “mechanical market definition exercises are particularly likely to obscure market realities” given the complexity of such systems).

b. *Competitive Realities in the Network Services Market*

The “pragmatic, factual approach” to market definition advocated by American Express, which relies on evidence of the “actual dynamics of the market” rather than concrete data regarding cross-elasticity, confirms Dr. Katz’s analysis and provides further support for the court’s determination that debit cards and their related acceptance services are not reasonably interchangeable with credit and charge products. See Brown Shoe, 370 U.S. at 336 (noting courts should apply “a pragmatic, factual approach to the definition of the relevant market and not a formalistic, legalistic one”); Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 495-500 (noting that in defining product markets, “[t]he emphasis always is on the actual dynamics of the market rather than rote application of any formula”).

In the decade since Visa, the payment systems market has undergone a significant evolution as consumers are increasingly using their debit cards to purchase goods and services at the point of sale. The number of households carrying debit cards has more than quadrupled since 1995, and today nearly as much purchase volume flows across debit networks as across GPCC networks. (Tr. at 6227:2-6228:10 (Bernheim); DX7828 at 10-11.) To American Express, debit’s dramatic growth over the past decade, together with new data that purport to show both an increased willingness among customers to use their debit and GPCC cards interchangeably and also greater alignment between cardholders’ perceptions of these two platforms, provides evidence that the product markets used in Visa are no longer viable and that debit must be included in the relevant product market in this case. But the market in this case cannot be

defined solely by reference to cardholders' views on substitutability between debit and GPCC cards at the point of sale, as customers' preferences are relevant only insofar as they provide insight into how merchants might respond to a price increase as to credit and charge cards. Instead, the critical question for the court is whether debit card network services are reasonably interchangeable with GPCC network services from the merchant's perspective such that they impose some form of competitive discipline on the suppliers of the latter, such as American Express, Visa, and MasterCard.¹⁶ While merchants' acceptance decisions are primarily driven by customer preferences, it is essential to recognize that other characteristics of credit and debit acceptance services are also material to that calculus, including training costs, speed of pay, and customer service. (See Tr. at 3831:22-3832:8 (Katz).) For the following reasons, the court finds that the actual dynamics in the marketplace for network services confirm that debit is properly excluded from the relevant product market in this case.

First, the record suggests a prevailing view among the GPCC card networks themselves that debit cards and acceptance services do not meaningfully affect the prices they charge to their merchants. See Brown Shoe, 370 U.S. at 325 (noting that among the "practical indicia" of reasonable interchangeability are "industry or public recognition of the [proposed market or] submarket as a separate economic entity" and whether "distinct prices" are charged); Geneva

¹⁶ Dr. Bernheim's conclusions, to the contrary, focused almost entirely on cardholders' inclination to substitute between credit and debit products, which, while certainly relevant to the reasonable interchangeability of the associated acceptance services from a merchant's perspective, does not tell the whole story. For example, Dr. Bernheim analyzed data regarding individual customers' spending patterns at specific supermarkets and drugstores, which showed that some customers were switching between debit and credit products, even when shopping at the same merchant. (Tr. at 6261:12-6262:15, 6267:4-6269:5 (Bernheim); DX7828 at 31-33, 35-36.) But Dr. Bernheim made no attempt to link that substitution to changes in the price for network services (see Tr. at 6635:22-6636:23 (Katz)), and did not explain why between two-thirds and three-quarters of the customers whose spending patterns were analyzed used only credit or debit and did not switch between the two forms of payment. (Id.) Defendants' expert also cited new data from a survey conducted by the Boston Federal Reserve to illustrate the changing perceptions of credit and debit products (id. at 6237:21-6244:3, 6248:22-6249:17 (Bernheim); DX7828 at 26), but his analysis appears to have overstated the significance of the shift in consumer attitudes (see id. at 6641:4-6643:15 (Katz)). For the reasons set forth here and in the remainder of this section, the court finds Dr. Bernheim's and Defendants' arguments concerning debit's inclusion in the relevant market to be unpersuasive.

Pharm., 386 F.3d at 496; Emigra Grp., 612 F. Supp. 2d at 356 (“[E]vidence of industry or public recognition of [a proposed market or] submarket as a separate economic unit’ is important in determining its relevance for antitrust purposes ‘because we assume that economic actors usually have accurate perceptions of economic realities.’” (internal citation and quotation marks omitted) (alterations in original)). American Express, for example, sets its pricing tables for each merchant segment by reference to Visa’s and MasterCard’s all-in credit card rates, not their debit card rates or blended credit/debit rates. (Tr. at 2562:16-2563:3, 2564:17-2565:4 (Funda/Amex); PX1240 at ‘091 (illustrative pricing methodology).) As explained by the American Express executive responsible for global merchant pricing, the company’s pricing methodology compares Amex’s discount rates to the all-in credit rates for Visa and MasterCard, rather than their blended credit/debit rates, because credit possesses “a sufficiently different feature set” when compared to debit and “a sufficiently different cost structure . . . [such] that it should be priced on its own merits and not combined with debit.” (Tr. 2730:17-23 (Funda/Amex).) Indeed, there is very little indication in the record that American Express views its merchant pricing as being constrained by debit rates. Discover, which offers both debit and credit products, similarly does not consider the price of debit services when setting merchant pricing for its credit card network services. (See id. at 818:16-23 (Hochschild/Discover).) American Express additionally rebuffs attempts by merchants to compare its higher discount rates to blended credit/debit rates charged by Visa and MasterCard, and instead recommends that merchants compare Amex’s pricing against its competitors only “on a credit to credit basis.” (See PX0010 (“[Amex] made it clear we do not compete with debit so we didn’t include it in [the rate] analysis.”); PX1110 at ‘311 (recommending that merchants consider Amex’s pricing premium only against what they “pay for similar Visa/MasterCard credit cards”); see also PX0068 at ‘514 (in a meeting with one large

retailer, Amex representatives explained that comparing Amex to Visa and MasterCard “on a credit to credit basis” is “a more accurate comparison” than a comparison including debit.)

Second, with regard to the cardholder side of the platform, product substitution at the point of sale is limited by the core functional differences between debit and GPCC cards. See Brown Shoe, 370 U.S. at 325 (considering indicia such as the “product’s peculiar characteristics and uses” and where the products have “distinct customers”). Debit cards are “pay now” products, allowing cardholders to make purchases using the funds deposited in their linked demand deposit accounts. (See PX1408 at 22 (Amex 2009 Form 10-K).) Credit cards, by contrast, are “pay later” products by virtue of the attached credit facility; cardholders may pay for their purchases in the future and carry a balance beyond the month in which a purchase was made. Similarly, charge cards enable customers to defer payment by virtue of the float, and increasingly allow cardholders to carry a balance forward to the next billing cycle. See supra Part I.A. Put simply, debit cards enable consumers to deduct from their existing funds—similar to checks—while spending on credit and charge cards results in an accruing balance that can be paid in the future. GPCC cards also offer an array of ancillary benefits to cardholders that typically are not offered on debit cards, including robust rewards programs. (Tr. at 3880:19-3883:6 (Katz).)

While debit and GPCC network services need not be perfect substitutes to be included in the same product market, see AD/SAT, 181 F.3d at 227-28, American Express has itself acknowledged that the functional differences between these two payment systems limit their interchangeability at the point of sale¹⁷ and affect customers’ spending behaviors. For example,

¹⁷ Indeed, in the last Form 10-K filed by American Express before initiation of this lawsuit, the company publicly acknowledged that “[t]he ability to substitute debit cards for credit and charge cards is limited because there is no credit extended and the consumer must have sufficient funds in his or her demand deposit account to pay for the

many consumers compartmentalize or tailor their spending to some degree on their GPCC or debit cards depending on the type or size of a transaction. (Tr. at 754:9-24 (Quagliata/Amex) (recognizing that “many people compartmentalize their spend . . . us[ing] different products for different reasons”), 3701:1-3703:5, 3744:7-3745:5 (Silverman/Amex); see also id. at 819:17-820:5 (Hochschild/Discover) (testifying to the compartmentalization phenomenon in the payment card industry).) According to one study performed by American Express, consumers tend to use their debit cards “when a purchase feels mundane or ‘everyday’” or when a “purchase falls below a personal threshold (anywhere from \$20-\$200).” (See PX2543 at ‘624, ‘634, ‘643 (indicating approximately 40% of Amex cardholders compartmentalize between credit and debit to some degree); see also Tr. at 3885:19-3889:10 (Katz) (tailoring is affected by the characteristics of both the consumer and the transaction); PX2702 at 42-47; Tr. at 6122:10-15, 6151:23-6152:6 (Mitchell/Official Payments) (noting Official Payments’s customers tend to use debit on purchases below \$300, and credit or charge on purchases above that amount); DX7828 at 30 (median transaction size on debit is approximately 25% lower than on GPCC cards).) Conversely, cardholders are more likely to put luxury or big-ticket purchases on their credit or charge cards. (See, e.g., Tr. at 563:22-564:24 (Bouchard/Sears), 1231:25-1232:12 (Kimmet/Home Depot); PX2702 at 43.) Business travelers likewise tend to use GPCC products when making purchases at T&E merchants in order to benefit from the deferred payment options while awaiting reimbursement by their employers. (See id. at 251:10-22 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 5908:2-18 (Flueck/Starwood Hotels).)

Though consumers in the United States are undeniably turning to debit cards with greater frequency than in the past—which, in the court’s view, may be attributable in part to shifting

purchase at the time of the transaction, as opposed to charge cards where payment is due at the end of the month or credit cards where payment can be extended over a period of time.” (PX1408 at 22 (Amex 2009 Form 10-K).)

attitudes toward credit in the wake of the Great Recession—the functional differences between debit and credit cards have not changed since the decisions in Visa. Merchants recognize that these qualitative differences influence customer payment behavior, and that the resulting spending patterns limit their ability to switch away from GPCC acceptance. (See, e.g., Tr. at 387:8-388:7 (Robinson/Ikea) (recognizing that Ikea’s “experience has shown us different customers[] have different payment preferences, and we have to offer those choices,” and discussing various rationales customers might use when compartmentalizing spend), 564:13-565:9 (Bouchard/Sears) (testifying that Sears would be at a competitive disadvantage if it shifted to debit-only acceptance given customer payment preferences), 1232:13-24 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 1525:9-21 (O’Malley/Best Buy), 2402:10-18, 2404:7-16 (Priebe/Southwest); see also id. at 5908:15-18 (Flueck/Starwood Hotels) (Starwood must continue to accept credit cards or risk losing business travelers).)

Third, the evidence adduced at trial indicates that merchants do not view debit and GPCC acceptance services as reasonably interchangeable. Even if debit’s increasing market share and shifting consumer perceptions as compared to GPCC products were taken to signal a greater inclination toward substitutability among cardholders, American Express has presented no evidence to suggest that merchants—the relevant consumers in this analysis—are willing to switch away from GPCC cards in favor of debit. To the contrary, the testimony elicited at trial suggests that merchants are sensitive to the spending preferences and credit-insistence of their customer base and, as a result, do not view debit network services as an economically viable substitute for GPCC networks services given the revenue that presumably would be lost to their credit-accepting competitors.¹⁸ Other merchants strongly prefer payment by credit and charge

¹⁸ See Tr. at 252:25-253:2 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines) (“Q: Can Alaska [A]irlines as an institution substitute the acceptance of debit cards for the acceptance of credit cards? A: No.”), 387:8-388:7 (Robinson/Ikea) (noting that

cards for reasons independent of cardholder demand, particularly when the merchant requires some form of security for a purchase. (See Tr. at 482:5-484:8, 485:7-23 (Satkowski/Enterprise) (Enterprise strongly prefers customers use credit because such cards provide superior identity verification and security for car rentals), 1610:2-1611:21 (Brennan/Hilton) (Hilton would actively discourage guests from using a debit card at check-in because the hotel must take an “overage” out of the linked checking account to ensure there are sufficient funds to cover incidental charges, and it may take up to six weeks for the funds to be refunded), 5906:17-5907:20 (Flueck/Starwood Hotels). American Express’s effort to undercut the merchant testimony presented at trial by pointing to the fact that some merchants use its blended debit/credit rate, which would be lower than a credit-only rate, in attempting to negotiate a lower discount rate with Amex is unpersuasive.¹⁹ (See, e.g., id. at 2284:11-23 (Berry/Amex).) Such use is, in the court’s view, more reasonably understood as a negotiating tactic employed by merchants in the hopes of negotiating a lower effective rate.

Fourth, and finally, the reaction—or, more accurately, the lack thereof—among merchants and the credit card networks to the significant decline in debit interchange rates that occurred as a result of the Durbin Amendment is further evidence that debit does not constrain

Ikea’s “experience has shown us that different customers [] have different preferences, and we have to offer those choices”); 564:20-565:9 (Bouchard/Sears) (testifying that Sears would be at a competitive disadvantage were it not to accept GPCC cards), 1231:1-1232:24 (Kimmel/Home Depot) (given Home Depot’s large average ticket size, it is “almost required to accept credit cards” and noting that if it dropped GPCC cards “a segment of the customer base . . . would clearly move to our competitors”), 1525:9-21 (O’Malley/Best Buy) (testifying that Best Buy has never considered accepting only debit cards because “consumers are expecting to pay with credit cards”), 5908:2-18 (Flueck/Starwood Hotels) (noting that Starwood must accept GPCC cards because business travelers generally book travel on their credit cards to allow time for reimbursement); see also id. at 1233:10-25 (Kimmel/Home Depot) (testifying that Home Depot would likely continue accepting GPCC cards in the face of a 10% increase in the discount rate), 1683:24-1684:5 (Dale/Sprint) (same).

¹⁹ Only one merchant, Jetro, appears to have successfully negotiated a lower discount rate based on the lower debit rates that took effect after the Durbin Amendment. (Tr. at 2282:17-2284:10 (Berry/Amex).) Yet even in that case, internal Amex documents made it clear that “Jetro will need to be educated on why debit and credit are separate products and why AXP should only be compared to credit.” (PX0011 at ‘627.) Accordingly, the court finds little probative weight in this example, and certainly not enough to outweigh the prevailing evidence presented at trial that credit and debit are viewed by networks and merchants alike as distinct product groups.

credit card network pricing and thus does not belong in the relevant market. See Brown Shoe, 370 U.S. at 325 (advising courts to consider evidence of “sensitivity to price changes”). The Durbin Amendment authorized the Federal Reserve to regulate interchange rates on debit cards issued by certain financial institutions, see Dodd-Frank Act § 1075, 15 U.S.C. § 1693o-2, which was accomplished by regulation in October 2011, see Regulation II, Debit Card Interchange Fees and Routing, 12 C.F.R. § 235.3. According to data from the Federal Reserve, following implementation of the Durbin Amendment the average debit interchange rate in the United States fell by 37% (see Tr. at 3926:10-24 (Katz); PX2702 at 63 (showing decline in the debit interchange rate from 1.24% to 0.78% in the three months following implementation)), and Dr. Katz calculated that all-in debit rates actually paid by merchants (including interchange, network, and acquirer rates) fell nearly 30% (Tr. at 3927:4-3928:10 (Katz); see also id. at 3929:5-25 (Katz) (noting two-sided price declined as well)).²⁰ Were debit in the relevant market, the court would expect to have seen the falling debit rates place downward pressure on GPCC prices as merchants switched away from credit network services to debit, given the increased price differential between the two forms of payment. (Id. at 3925:1-3926:3 (Katz).)

Yet the market’s reaction was quite different. Following implementation of the Durbin Amendment in 2011, there was no significant merchant attrition from the major credit card networks in favor of debit services, notwithstanding the increased savings that could be recognized by switching consumers from credit to debit cards.²¹ (See id. at 819:14-16

²⁰ The court is not persuaded by Dr. Bernheim’s argument that the proper measure of the Durbin Amendment’s impact in the marketplace is an unweighted average of rates paid by merchants, as opposed to the figures used by Dr. Katz and the Federal Reserve to measure the Durbin Amendment’s effect on debit rates, which are weighted by charge volume. (Tr. at 6519:15-6520:24 (Bernheim).) While the raw measure of how many merchants did or did not see a decline in their debit rates is interesting, the more relevant metric for determining interchangeability from the merchant’s perspective, including how much incremental profit a merchant might realize by dropping GPCC cards entirely, cannot be calculated or even approximated on an unweighted basis.

²¹ The anecdotal evidence provided by those merchants that testified at trial supports the observations of Dr. Katz. Despite the decline in debit rates after the Durbin Amendment, none of these merchants saw any decline in their

(Hochschild/Discover), 2723:2-19 (Funda/Amex), 3931:3-3932:21 (Katz) (noting “merchants did not respond by dropping credit cards en masse,” and that in fact, merchant acceptance grew during this period).) And, relatedly, lower debit rates did not result in any appreciable decrease in the price of credit card network services charged to merchants by American Express and its fellow GPCC networks. (See id. at 820:6-8 (Hochschild/Discover) (Discover did not reduce rates in response to Durbin), 3930:1-7 (Katz) (noting “very little, if anything” happened to GPCC prices); see also PX0920 (expressing concern about potential merchant responses to falling debit rates, but noting “fact [is] that debit and credit are not substitutes in the consumer’s (or Durbin’s) mind”); PX0089 at ‘343 (Amex analysis of likelihood merchants would switch to debit in response to the Durbin Amendment).) Thus, the natural experiment afforded by implementation of the Durbin Amendment for observing the degree of cross-elasticity between GPCC and debit acceptance services, or, for that matter, the degree to which debit fees constrain pricing by and the business behavior of GPCC card networks, provides additional support for excluding debit from the relevant market.²²

B. Plaintiffs’ Proposed T&E Submarket

Within the boundaries of the broader network services market, Plaintiffs additionally propose that the court recognize a submarket consisting of GPCC card network services provided to T&E merchants. (See Tr. at 3912:15-19, 6645:16-19 (Katz); Pls. Post-Trial Br. (Dkt. 606) at

credit card pricing. (Tr. at 251:23-252:8 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 407:13-408:6 (Robinson/Ikea), 1525:24-1526:6 (O’Malley/Best Buy), 1611:22-1612:5 (Brennan/Hilton).) Nor did any of the merchants switch away from GPCC acceptance after Durbin. (See id. at 1234:12-1235:5 (Kimmert/Home Depot), 1525:9-1526:3 (O’Malley/Best Buy), 2321:21-2322:7 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel), 5297:16-5298:5 (Gutierrez/Strictly Bicycles); see also id. at 2723:5-8 (Funda/Amex) (testifying that he was unaware of any merchant that ceased accepting GPCC cards and relied on debit).)

²² Of course, declining interchange fees on debit cards cannot be equated with lower prices for debit network services, as these are two separate elements of the overall debit discount fee. Nonetheless, the absence of any meaningful reaction among merchants to both lower interchange rates and lower all-in rates for debit acceptance supports the court’s determination that debit and credit network services are not reasonably interchangeable from the merchants’ perspective.

34-35.) See also Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 496 (“Reasonable interchangeability sketches the boundaries of a market, but there may also be cognizable submarkets which themselves constitute the appropriate market for antitrust analysis.” (citing Brown Shoe, 370 U.S. 325)). Relying primarily on American Express’s practice of segmenting its merchant base by industry, and setting different pricing tables for each merchant segment, Plaintiffs attempt to establish the existence of their submarket by proving a hypothetical monopolist would similarly be able to segment and target T&E merchants for higher discount rates. (See Tr. at 3906:20-3912:19, 6645:16-6646:16 (Katz).) See also Merger Guidelines § 4.1.4 (recognizing that markets may be defined around “targeted consumers” in limited circumstances). Courts have recognized that these so-called “price discrimination markets” may be defined around a set of consumers that are particularly vulnerable to such practices. See, e.g., E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co. v. Kolon Indus., Inc., 637 F.3d 435, 448 (4th Cir. 2011); Spirit Airlines, Inc. v. Nw. Airlines, Inc., 431 F.3d 917, 935 (6th Cir. 2005); see also 2B Phillip E. Areeda, Herbert Hovenkamp & John L. Solow, Antitrust Law ¶ 534d(1), at 269 (3d ed. 2007) [hereinafter Areeda & Hovenkamp] (“Successful price discrimination means that the disfavored geographic or product class is insulated from the favored class and, if the discrimination is of sufficient magnitude, should be counted as a separate relevant market.”). (See also Tr. at 3911:2-7 (Katz), 6296:25-6297:10 (Bernheim).)

Here, however, Plaintiffs have failed to establish that a hypothetical monopolist’s ability to charge a higher price in T&E industries constitutes price discrimination such that it would be appropriate to define a submarket around these “targeted customers.” See Merger Guidelines §§ 3, 4.1.4. All four GPCC networks pursue pricing strategies that require the ability to segment their merchant bases by industry and to charge different rates to different segments. (See Tr. at

733:14-22 (Quagliata/Amex) (describing industry segmentation as the “guiding criteria” for Amex’s pricing strategy), 3906:20-3907:23, 3909:18-3910:7 (Katz).) But differential pricing is discriminatory, and thus relevant to the definition of the T&E submarket, only if the different prices being charged do not reflect actual differences in the network’s costs of providing services to the different merchant segments. (Tr. at 4093:10-14 (Katz) (agreeing that “price discrimination is a supplier’s charging different prices to two customers after accounting for differences in the supplier’s incremental costs of serving those two customers”).) See also Eastman Kodak, 63 F.3d at 106-07 (“[E]vidence that Kodak film sells for different prices in different parts of the world is insufficient to establish price discrimination without proof that Kodak’s costs are uniform throughout the world.” (emphasis in original)); 2B Areeda & Hovenkamp § 517, at 150-55.

Looking, as Plaintiffs do, to evidence of American Express’s pricing practices in T&E industries, the court finds insufficient evidence in the record to conclude that the higher prices charged therein are discriminatory. (See Tr. at 6297:19-6301:9 (Bernheim).) In attempting to show that Defendants’ higher discount rates in T&E industries are not driven by higher costs, and are therefore discriminatory, Dr. Katz’s analysis compared two proposed measures of American Express’s price-cost margin on network services across multiple merchant segments. Each measure, however, is flawed. Dr. Katz first used internal data from American Express concerning the company’s “contribution margin” across various industries, which is a measure of Amex’s revenue less its variable costs on each dollar of charge volume. (Tr. at 3984:1-20 (Katz); PX2702 at 87.) Not only does contribution margin fail to account for the network’s fixed costs, resulting in an inexact measure of margin depending on how those costs are allocated by industry, but the internal database from which these figures were drawn also does not distinguish

between Amex's various business lines. As a result, the margin calculations include revenues and costs associated with Defendants' issuing business, not just the network services business. (Tr. at 4102:10-4103:20 (Katz).)

Alternatively, Dr. Katz attempted to approximate American Express's margins by beginning with the network's average discount rate in each industry, and then subtracting Defendants' third-party "issuer rate," which is analogous to the interchange rates charged on Visa's and MasterCard's systems. (Id. at 3982:11-3983:23; PX2702 at 86.) The portions of the discount rate retained by Amex vary significantly by industry segment, and, according to Dr. Katz, "are larger than any plausible . . . cost differences" that may exist in servicing each set of customers. (Tr. at 3983:13-17 (Katz).) Yet this approach also fails to disaggregate Amex's various lines of business and provides, at best, only an indirect approximation of Amex's margins on network services in each industry. Similarly, the court lacks data regarding the other networks' costs of providing network services in the proposed T&E submarket.

Accordingly, Plaintiffs have not established that American Express, or any of its competitors, are able to charge discriminatory prices in the industries that would appear to comprise Plaintiffs' proposed T&E submarket. Though a hypothetical monopolist likely would be able to isolate and impose higher prices in such industries, the court lacks a reliable basis for inferring that those prices would not be driven by cost differences associated with serving T&E merchants. (See id. at 6347:19-6348:3 (Bernheim).) Additionally, Plaintiffs have not clearly defined the contours of their proposed submarket. It is not apparent which merchant industries would be included in a "travel and entertainment" submarket and which would not, and Plaintiffs have not provided the court with adequate grounds for making those determinations itself. For

these reasons, the court finds that Plaintiffs have failed to establish a cognizable price discrimination market around merchants in T&E industries.

* * *

As a result, the court concludes that Plaintiffs have established that the relevant market for the court's antitrust analysis in this case is the market for general purpose credit and charge card network services in the United States. Plaintiffs have not proven the existence of a cognizable submarket for network services sold to T&E merchants. That Plaintiffs have failed to establish a T&E submarket is ultimately of no consequence, however, as the discussion below holds that Plaintiffs have successfully demonstrated that Defendants possess market power in the GPCC card network services market.

IV. MARKET POWER

As explained in Parts IV and V of this Decision, the court concludes that Plaintiffs have successfully discharged their initial burden under the rule of reason using both the direct and indirect methods of proof: Amex's NDPs have adversely affected competition in the network services market, and American Express possesses sufficient market power to cause such effects. In the interests of continuity and clarity, the court begins by completing the market analysis begun in the prior section before considering Plaintiffs' efforts to prove that the NDPs have caused actual detrimental effects on competition.

To prevail on a market power theory of liability, Plaintiffs must prove that American Express possesses market power in the GPCC card network services market and that there are "other grounds to believe that the defendant's behavior will harm competition market-wide." K.M.B. Warehouse, 61 F.3d at 129. Defined by the Supreme Court as the "power to control prices or exclude competition," E.I. du Pont, 351 U.S. at 391; Kodak, 504 U.S. at 481 ("the

ability of a single seller to raise price and restrict output”); see also K.M.B. Warehouse, 61 F.3d at 129 (market power is “the ability to raise price significantly above the competitive level without losing all of one’s business”), market power may be proven directly through evidence of “specific conduct indicating the defendant’s power to control prices or exclude competition,” or it may be inferred based on the defendant firm’s large share of the relevant market when viewed in the context of the competitive dynamics therein, see Kodak, 504 U.S. at 464; K.M.B. Warehouse, 61 F.3d at 129; Todd, 275 F.3d at 206; Commercial Data Servers, Inc. v. Int’l Bus. Machs. Corp., 262 F. Supp. 2d 50, 73 (S.D.N.Y. 2003). The Government presents evidence on both points. Although an assessment of whether American Express possesses antitrust market power is a question of fact to be decided on the basis of the record developed at trial, the Visa decisions nonetheless provide a helpful roadmap for the court’s analysis in this case. Both the district court and Second Circuit in Visa relied on three categories of evidence in finding that Visa and MasterCard, both jointly and separately, possessed market power in the GPCC card network services market: (1) defendants’ market shares and the structural characteristics of the market; (2) cardholder insistence; and (3) the networks’ pricing practices and merchants’ continued acceptance despite price increases. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 340-42; Visa II, 344 F.3d at 239-40.

Considering many of the same types of evidence introduced into the factual record in this case, and for the additional reasons outlined below, the court concludes that American Express does possess antitrust market power in the GPCC card network services market sufficient to cause an adverse effect on competition. Specifically, the court finds that Defendants enjoy significant market share in a highly concentrated market with high barriers to entry, and are able to exercise uncommon leverage over their merchant-consumers due to the amplifying effect of

cardholder insistence and derived demand. In addition, American Express's ability to impose significant price increases during its Value Recapture initiatives between 2005 and 2010 without any meaningful merchant attrition is compelling evidence of Defendants' power in the network service market. Plaintiffs' other pricing arguments are less persuasive, and are ultimately unnecessary to the court's finding that American Express possesses market power.

A. Market Share, Concentration, and Barriers to Entry

American Express's percentage share of the network services market is compelling evidence of market power. In reaching this determination, the court remains mindful that data regarding a firm's raw share of the relevant market is probative of market power only after "full consideration of the relationship between market share and other relevant market characteristics," including the "strength of the competition, the probable development of the industry, the barriers to entry, the nature of the anticompetitive conduct[,] and the elasticity of consumer demand" that characterize this particular market. Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 98; see also In re Payment Card, 562 F. Supp. 2d at 402. In Visa, the court inferred market power on the part of Visa and MasterCard—which at the time accounted for 47% and 26% of total general purpose credit card spending, respectively—based upon their "large market shares in a highly concentrated network market with only four significant competitors." Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 341-42; Visa II, 344 F.3d at 240. Few of the structural elements of the network services market noted in Visa have changed in the intervening years.

Today, American Express is the second largest GPCC card network when measured by charge volume. As of 2013, Amex accounted for 26.4% of general purpose credit and charge card purchase volume in the United States. (Jt. Stmt. ¶ 20.) It trails only Visa's 45% market share, and is larger than both MasterCard (23.3%) and Discover (5.3%). (Id.) Despite Amex's

protestations to the contrary, the proper metric for assigning market shares among the four GPCC networks is the dollar value of the transactions facilitated on those networks. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 341; Visa II, 344 F.3d at 240; In re Payment Card, 562 F. Supp. 2d at 400; see also Merger Guidelines § 5.2 (“In most contexts, the Agencies measure each firm’s market share based on its . . . revenues in the relevant market.”). Although other measures of a network’s size, such as the number of cards in circulation, the breadth of its merchant acceptance network (whether actual or perceived), and the total number of transactions, will affect that firm’s ability to compete in a market characterized by network effects, charge volume is the most direct measure of output in this particular market, and is also the primary determinant of the remuneration networks receive from merchants in exchange for network services. See Merger Guidelines § 5.2 (“In most contexts, each firm’s market share is based on its actual or projected revenues from the targeted customers.”). As a result, in terms of raw percentage share of the relevant market, American Express is larger today than MasterCard was at the time of the Visa litigation, when the Second Circuit held that MasterCard possessed market power.²³

²³ Defendants attempt to undercut Plaintiffs’ market share argument by arguing that firms with under 30% market share presumptively lack market power in the Second Circuit. (Tr. at 6932:16-23 (Closing Argument).) Defendants find support for this market power threshold in Commercial Data Servers, Inc. v. International Business Machines Corp., in which Judge McMahon of the Southern District of New York noted that “[c]ourts have consistently held that firms with market shares of less than 30% are presumptively incapable of exercising market power.” 262 F. Supp. 2d 50, 74 (S.D.N.Y. 2003) (citation and internal quotation marks omitted). Yet absent clear precedent from the Second Circuit establishing the 30% threshold advocated by American Express—and there is none—the court is unwilling to endorse Defendants’ unduly formalistic and arbitrary approach to market power. Market share is but one factor considered when attempting to approximate a defendant firm’s power in a relevant market, and that a firm’s share falls below some arbitrary threshold cannot disprove allegations of market power without reference to the other competitive dynamics at play. See United States v. Columbia Steel Co., 334 U.S. 495, 528 (1948) (“The relative effect of percentage command of a market varies with the setting in which that factor is placed.”); Allen-Myland, Inc. v. Int’l Bus. Machs. Corp., 33 F.3d 194, 209 (3d Cir. 1994) (“Market share is just a way of estimating market power, which is the ultimate consideration. When there are better ways to estimate market power, the court should use them.” (quoting Ball Mem’l Hosp., Inc. v. Mut. Hosp. Ins. Co., 784 F.2d 1325, 1336 (7th Cir. 1986) (Easterbrook, J.))). Moreover, Amex’s proposed threshold is inconsistent with the Second Circuit’s finding in Visa that MasterCard, which at the time possessed a 26% share of the network services market, possessed market power sufficient to establish a Section 1 violation. Visa II, 344 F.3d at 240.

Furthermore, the network services market remains highly concentrated and constrained by high barriers to entry, just as it was in Visa. American Express is one of only four major suppliers of GPCC card network services, and three of the competitors in this market (Visa, American Express, and MasterCard) are significantly larger than the fourth (Discover). (Tr. at 3826:9-3827:9 (Katz); see also id. at 3939:5-3941:22 (Katz) (finding the Herfindahl-Hirschman Index for GPCC card network services is “well above” the “threshold for being highly concentrated”).) The structural susceptibility of this market to an exercise of market power is exacerbated by its inherently high barriers to entry, which further reduce the likelihood that an attempt at anticompetitive conduct would be defeated by new suppliers entering the market. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 342 (“The higher the barriers to entry, and the longer the lags before new entry, the less likely it is that potential entrants would be able to enter the market in a timely, likely, and sufficient scale to deter or counteract any anticompetitive restraints.” (citing Merger Guidelines § 3.0)); see also In re Payment Card, 562 F. Supp. 2d at 402 (noting that “whereas a seller in a market with low entry barriers could not raise its prices without the risk that a new seller would enter the market and offer the same product for a lower price, a competitor in a market with high entry barriers could raise its prices unfettered by the prospect of a new entrant into the market who would undercut prices”). In addition to the sizable setup costs associated with developing the infrastructure and branding necessary to compete in the network services market, any new entrant would also need to overcome what executives from Amex and Discover have termed the “chicken and the egg problem.” That is, due to the aforementioned network effects inherent in this platform, a firm attempting entry into the GPCC network market would struggle to convince merchants to join a network without a significant population of cardholders and, in turn, would also struggle to convince cardholders to carry a card associated

with a network that is accepted at few merchants. (Tr. at 820:23-821:16 (Hochschild/Discover), 3942:16-3943:2 (Katz), 4296:12-24 (Chenault/Amex).) See also Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 341-42. Accordingly, the network services market is not only highly concentrated, it is also remarkably static; no firm has entered the GPCC card network services market in the United States since Discover launched its network in 1985.²⁴

The rise of new digital payment options like PayPal, Square, and Google Wallet do not pose an entry threat to American Express or the other GPCC card networks at this time. Rather than establish their own payment networks, these services piggyback on existing methods of payment—including credit and charge, debit, and ACH—in order to facilitate their use at both online and brick-and-mortar merchants. (See Tr. at 3714:6-18 (Silverman/Amex), 3945:6-3946:13 (Katz).) PayPal, for example, functions as an electronic wallet, enabling consumers to load multiple payment methods into a single online account and then choose which payment option to use at the moment of purchase. (See id. at 1271:16-1272:9 (Kimmert/Home Depot), 2428:8-15 (Priebe/Southwest).) These companies are viewed by American Express and its network rivals as GPCC-accepting merchants, not as competitors in the network services market. (See id. at 823:19-23 (Hochschild/Discover), 3714:5-3715:1 (Silverman/Amex).) Although electronic wallets like PayPal and Square are recognized by American Express to present unique competitive challenges to its business, these difficulties are traceable to the fact that their services have proven effective at steering customers to debit and ACH and that they interrupt the

²⁴ Discover's successful entry in 1985 may be attributed to two unique factors that are unlikely to be replicated in today's market. First, Discover offered a "breakthrough value proposition" for cardholders, offering cash back rewards at no annual fee—in fact, Discover was "the first card to have any form of rewards." (Tr. at 820:23-821:16 (Hochschild/Discover).) Second, and perhaps more importantly for overcoming the network effects just described, Discover was initially owned and operated by one of the nation's largest retailers, Sears, which marketed Discover's cards to its already significant population of private label cardholders. (Id. at 823:3-16 (Hochschild/Discover).) Similar entry today would be "impossible," according to Discover. (Id.)

typically direct relationship between Amex and its cardholders. (Id. at 3711:20-3713:23, 3715:2-14 (Silverman/Amex); DX7524; see also Tr. at 1270:3-18 (Kimmet/Home Depot).)

Consequently, American Express's 26.4% share of a highly concentrated market with significant barriers to entry suggests that the firm possesses market power. See, e.g., Visa II, 344 F.3d at 239-40; see also Toys "R" Us, Inc. v. F.T.C., 221 F.3d 928, 937 (7th Cir. 2000) (finding firm exercised market power notwithstanding only 20% share of national wholesale market). Yet, Amex's market share alone likely would not suffice to prove market power by a preponderance of the evidence were it not for the amplifying effect of cardholder insistence.

B. Cardholder Insistence

American Express's highly insistent or loyal cardholder base is critical to the court's finding of market power in this case. The ability of merchants to resist potential anticompetitive behavior by Amex, including significant price increases, by shifting customers to less expensive credit card networks or other forms of payment is severely impeded by the segment of Amex's cardholder base who insist on paying with their Amex cards and who would shop elsewhere or spend less if unable to use their cards of choice. In Visa, both the district court and Second Circuit recognized the amplifying effect of cardholder loyalty on Visa's and MasterCard's positions in the market, noting that insistence effectively precluded merchants from dropping acceptance of either Visa or MasterCard credit cards and supported a finding of market power as to both networks. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 340-41 (noting merchants "cannot refuse to accept Visa and MasterCard even in the face of significant price increases because the cards are such preferred payment methods that customers would choose not to shop at merchants who do not accept them"); Visa II, 344 F. 3d at 240. Here, the record developed at trial illustrates a similar dynamic among Defendants' cardholders and merchants, supported not only by merchant

testimony on the effect of cardholder insistence, but also by American Express itself, which expressly recognizes, quantifies, and leverages the loyalty of its cardholders in its business dealings with merchants.

Cardholder insistence is derived from a variety of sources. First, and perhaps most importantly, cardholders are incentivized to use their Amex cards by the robust rewards programs offered by the network.²⁵ Enrollees in American Express's Membership Rewards program, for example, receive points for purchases made with their Amex cards, and may then redeem those points with Amex or one of its redemption partners for merchandise, gift cards, frequent flyer miles, statement credits, or other goods and services. (Tr. at 3548:13-3549:22 (Silverman/Amex), 4298:20-4300:13 (Chenault/Amex).) Cardholders who value the ability to earn points, miles, or cash rebates often centralize their spending on their Amex cards to maximize these benefits. (See PX0426 at '649.) Similar "single-homing" behavior is also observed among the approximately 10-20% of Amex cardholders who own or regularly carry only their Amex cards (PX0815 at '290; DX7249 at '207; DX7828 at 85-86), as well as among those cardholders who consolidate their credit card spending on their American Express cards for other reasons. Amex's industry-leading corporate card program, for instance, drives a significant degree of insistent spending, particularly at those T&E merchants that cater to the needs of business travelers. (Tr. at 2569:13-2570:9 (Funda/Amex), 3962:3-3964:19 (Katz), 6378:16-6379:20 (Bernheim); PX2486 at '053 (stating Amex captured 64.3% of corporate card spend in first half of 2013).) Indeed, according to one study by American Express, approximately 70% of

²⁵ Tr. at 3962:3-24 (Katz) (noting Amex's "very attractive rewards program" to be "the big source of insistence" for most Amex cardholders), 4759:15-29 (Glenn/Amex); PX0426 at '649 (Amex presentation noting "research indicates strong loyalty to American Express Cards" "[d]riven by [the] ability to earn points, miles, or cash rebates" and that many cardholders "use American Express exclusively to consolidate rewards"); PX0111 at '812 (asserting "American Express rewards programs drive greater loyalty" in pitch to Alaska Airlines); see also PX0815 at '284 (study noting 84% of Amex cardholders are enrolled in one of Amex's rewards programs).

Corporate Card consumers are subject to some form of “mandation” policy, by which employers require the employee-cardholders to use Amex cards for business expenses. (PX0634 at ‘112.)

As in Visa, Plaintiffs also have presented merchant testimony illustrating the manner in which cardholder insistence effectively prevents merchants from dropping American Express. While a number of merchant witnesses testified that their companies had never considered terminating acceptance of Amex due to the network’s share of the merchants’ receipts or a generalized concern that their customers would shop elsewhere if unable to use their American Express cards,²⁶ others have analyzed the issue in detail and arrived at the same conclusion: The foregone profits associated with losing Amex-insistent customers rendered dropping Amex commercially impractical.²⁷ Though American Express may be fairly characterized as a discretionary card for consumers when compared to the ubiquity enjoyed by Visa and MasterCard (see Tr. at 4312:10-22 (Chenault/Amex)), the degree to which its cardholders insist on using their Amex cards affords the network significant power over merchants, particularly in a market in which merchants’ primary recourse when faced with a price increase or similar conduct is an “all-or-nothing” acceptance decision. (See id. at 3974:18-3976:12 (Katz).)

Defendants’ efforts to minimize the significance of cardholder insistence by recasting it as mere

²⁶ E.g., Tr. at 247:25-248:13 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 573:6-574:5 (Bouchard/Sears) (testifying that Sears had never considered dropping American Express because “we would lose an unacceptable amount of sales”), 1262:23-25 (Kimmert/Home Depot), 2322:8-25 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel) (stating that he would be “extremely nervous” about adverse effects on sales associated with dropping Amex because of the “large percentage of spend coming through [Amex]”), 1606:4-18 (Brennan/Hilton) (stating Hilton would likely lose about two-thirds of its current Amex charge volume if it no longer accepted American Express), 3146:2-6 (Gibson/Sinclair) (noting it would “be crazy not to take [American Express]” at Sinclair’s hotel properties because it constitutes “34 percent of the business”).

²⁷ E.g., id. at 389:10-390:10 (Robinson/Ikea) (noting there had been “internal discussions about whether or not it would be feasible to drop American Express,” but that after conducting internal surveys among its customers, Ikea concluded the company could not drop Amex without “suffering a loss in sales” attributable to Amex-insistent cardholders shopping elsewhere), 491:1-494:8 (Satkowski/Enterprise) (testifying that Enterprise determined it could not drop Amex because its “corporate customers were not interested in paying fo[r] their rental with a different method of payment”), 1529:6-1536:22 (O’Malley/Best Buy) (stating that Best Buy had conducted a “war game” to evaluate feasibility of dropping Amex, but after estimating levels of insistence among various cardholder segments it concluded “the numbers [were] pretty stark” that Best Buy should continue acceptance), 1687:12-1690:12, 1759:13-23 (Dale/Sprint) (Sprint twice considered dropping Amex, but did not do so because “[t]here was a concern that we would lose customers . . . if we made that decision,” particularly among corporate cardholders).

“brand loyalty” are unavailing. Amex I, 21 F. Supp. 3d at 200-01 (finding Defendants’ brand loyalty argument unconvincing).

Nor may insistence be dismissed as a mere marketing ploy. American Express itself uses insistence-based calculations to inform its pricing strategy and to persuade merchants of the importance of accepting its cards. When evaluating its industry-specific rate tables, for example, Amex’s pricing team begins with a baseline rate equal to the Visa/MasterCard all-in credit card rate (i.e., the average rate charged across Visa’s and MasterCard’s various card offerings) and then adds the value of “the incremental business that [Amex] bring[s] to [its] merchants,” which the company equates with the amount of spend attributable to its insistent cardholders. (Tr. at 2563:5-22 (Funda/Amex) (acknowledging that “[t]he metric that we use to back into how much incremental volume we bring to our merchants is an insistence-based metric”).) The company tracks and applies three measures of insistence for this purpose: (1) “walk away” insistence, which captures those cardholders who would shop elsewhere if unable to use their Amex cards, (2) “spend less” insistence, which captures those cardholders who would shop less frequently at a merchant or spend less per visit, and (3) corporate insistence, which captures the effect of employer mandation policies among Amex’s corporate cardholders. (Id. at 2567:23-2570:9 (Funda/Amex); see also 2571:9-2573:15 (Funda/Amex); PX1240 at ‘091, 102-03 (Amex calculations of “total insistence” for use in its pricing strategy).) Amex regularly surveys its cardholders to estimate the degree of insistence in each industry segment to ensure its calculations reflect actual market realities. (Tr. at 2570:10-2571:11 (Funda/Amex).) Defendants use these figures to approximate the amount of charge volume and associated profit realized by participants in each industry segment that it believes is traceable to insistent spend—i.e., the incremental value of Amex acceptance or, alternatively, the business put at risk by defecting

from the network—and, in turn, to inform its decision-making when identifying opportunities to raise merchant prices relative to the value it believes it delivers.²⁸ (*Id.* at 2639:14-22, 2819:19-2820:16 (Funda/Amex); PX1240 at ‘104; see also Tr. at 3957:20-3961:16 (Katz) (testifying that, based on his review of Amex’s pricing methodology, Defendants “recognize[] insistence is one of the things that gives them the ability to charge merchants higher prices”).)

When negotiating with merchants, Defendants also rely on the restraining effects of cardholder insistence to explain why ceasing to accept American Express cards would be unprofitable. In 2008, for example, when justifying a price increase imposed as part of a repricing initiative termed “Value Recapture,” see infra Part IV.C.1, American Express reminded merchants in the airlines group that the network’s “highly insistent cardholders” or “loyalists” were responsible for hundreds of millions in charge volume that would be put “at risk” by not accepting the price increase, rendering it “essential [for the airlines] to accept American Express.” (See, e.g., PX0111 at ‘806, ‘814 (Alaska Airlines); PX1601 at ‘263, ‘271 (Southwest); PX0517 at ‘026 (American Airlines).) Similarly, in a standardized presentation used by Amex client managers when justifying a series of Value Recapture price increases to restaurants in 2010, Amex paired its standard value proposition to merchants with a warning that, according to its data, nearly 50% of Amex cardholders “[w]ould no longer dine, [w]ould dine less often or would spend less” if the restaurants chose not to accept American Express. (PX0957 at ‘900, ‘914, ‘916-17, ‘921, ‘923-24.)

²⁸ Though Amex’s value-based pricing methodology is only one of several inputs the network uses when setting its headline discount rates (see Tr. at 2564:18-2565:4 (Funda/Amex)), the conceptual framework used by Amex’s pricing team nonetheless demonstrates Defendants’ own reliance on estimates of cardholder insistence in the ordinary course of business, as well as a recognition by the network that the uncommon loyalty of its cardholders amplifies its leverage over merchants. This is, in effect, the same dynamic observed in *Visa*. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 340-41.

The existence and practical effect of cardholder insistence on merchant choice are not merely theoretical, as demonstrated by the various “real world” examples cited by Plaintiffs. For example, when Murphy Oil, a chain of gas stations located primarily in Wal-Mart parking lots, terminated its acceptance of American Express cards during the Great Recession in 2008, the network tracked the response among its cardholders and found that the actual insistence rate it observed among Murphy Oil’s customers was twice what the company’s research had previously estimated. (See PX0031 at ‘668, ‘671.) As noted by Jack Funda, the head of Amex’s pricing unit, in an email to his colleagues, the data illustrated that Murphy Oil’s decision to terminate was “irrational” and that “this case example suggests that [cardholder] insistence in Oil is real and strong -- we should be able to make use of this data in our merchant negotiations.” (Id. at ‘668.) Murphy Oil eventually resumed its acceptance of American Express. (Tr. at 2703:23-25 (Funda/Amex).)

Even the nation’s largest merchants are not immune to the effects of cardholder insistence. Walgreen, which was at the time the ninth largest retailer in the United States, was forced to retreat from a 2004 decision to terminate acceptance of American Express in the face of public outcry from its customers, who told the drugstore that they would take their business to a competitor if unable to use their Amex cards. (See id. at 1343:2-4, 1352:1-1399:7 (Rein/Walgreen).) Like Murphy Oil, Walgreen ultimately “capitulated” to American Express and agreed to a new acceptance agreement containing the pricing terms that were substantially similar to those the retailer had previously deemed unacceptable and which had led to its decision to drop Amex. (Id. at 1363:11-1365:19, 1398:18-1399:4, 1517:2-11 (Rein/Walgreen) (testifying that Walgreen believed Amex’s offer of a 10 basis point decrease to its discount rate was unacceptable given the magnitude of American Express’s premium over competitor rates,

but that Walgreen ultimately agreed to a similar decrease—albeit on a different timeline); PX1966; PX1969 at ‘367; PX1965; DX2143 at ‘943 (noting Amex’s proposal left it with a 50 basis point premium over Visa/MasterCard).)

This is not to suggest, however, that merchant defection is something Amex takes lightly; losing a merchant hurts the network’s bottom line as the merchant presumably also has loyal customers and, perhaps more importantly, risks spillover effects at other acceptance locations. (See Tr. at 5958:3-5959:5 (McNeal/Amex); see also id. at 1626:18-1628:6 (Brennan/Hilton).) Nonetheless, the experiences of Murphy Oil and Walgreen, together with the other “natural experiments” cited by Plaintiffs, illustrate the manner in which cardholder loyalty, and the prospect of losing insistent charge volume by terminating acceptance, constrains merchants’ ability to resist anticompetitive behavior by American Express. (See PX0031 at ‘671 (noting cost to Murphy Oil of defection far exceeded the cost to Amex).)

Finally, the court is unconvinced by Defendants’ argument that cardholder insistence cannot be a source of durable market power. (See Defs. Post-Trial Br. (Dkt. 605) at 44-45; see also Tr. at 5067:6-5068:9 (Gilbert), 6350:6-6351:25 (Bernheim).) Though Defendants are correct that transitory market power is not of particular concern under the federal antitrust laws, the requirement that market power be “durable” speaks to whether a new entrant or other market forces could quickly bring the defendant’s exercise of power to an end. See Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 509 (“[A] transitory advantage does not significantly harm competition and therefore should not violate § 1”); AD/SAT, 181 F.3d at 229; see also 2B Areeda & Hovenkamp ¶ 510, at 110 (“[T]ransitory power may safely be ignored by antitrust law. The social costs of antitrust intervention (including its error potential) are likely to exceed the gains when market forces themselves would bring the defendant’s power to an end fairly quickly.”). The court is

aware of no authority that supports Defendants' position that market power is not durable if its maintenance requires continual and replicable investment by the defendant firm. Put simply, American Express cannot avert a finding of market power premised on cardholder insistence merely because that loyalty and its current market share would dissipate if the company were to stop investing in those programs that make its product valuable to cardholders. Of course it would, as would the share of any company that abandoned a core element of a successful business model. Here, the durability of Defendants' power is ensured by the sustained high barriers to entry in the network services market, see supra Part IV.A, as evidenced by the lack of any meaningful entry into the market since 1985, and the decades-long persistence of the restraints at issue in this case. See United States v. Microsoft, 253 F.3d 34, 82 (D.C. Cir. 2001); Colo. Interstate Gas Co. v. Natural Gas Pipeline Co. of Am., 885 F.2d 683, 695 n.21 (10th Cir. 1989).

C. Pricing Practices

Certain of Amex's pricing practices provide direct evidence of the company's market power in the network services market, albeit to varying degrees. As discussed below, the record shows that between 2005 and 2010, American Express repeatedly and profitably raised its discount rates to millions of merchants across the United States as part of its Value Recapture ("VR") initiative without losing a single large merchant and losing relatively few small merchants as a result. Similar evidence of low defection rates among merchants following repeated network price increases was viewed by the district court in Visa as strong evidence of Visa and MasterCard's market power. See Visa, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 340 (in finding defendants possessed market power, noting "both Visa and MasterCard have recently raised interchange

rates charged to merchants a number of times, without losing a single merchant customer as a result”). The court finds the same is true here.

In addition, Plaintiffs aver that American Express’s ability to price discriminate between various industry segments, and its stated policy of maintaining a pricing premium over the mix-adjusted rates of Visa and MasterCard, are additional evidence of market power. While probative of Amex’s ability to control prices in the network services market, this evidence is less persuasive than that regarding Value Recapture and, in the court’s view, is not necessary to its finding that American Express possesses market power.

1. Value Recapture

Faced with a declining premium over the all-in rates charged by Visa and MasterCard in the early 2000s, see infra at Part IV.C.3, American Express executed a series of targeted price increases in certain industry segments between 2005 and 2010, with the stated purpose of better aligning its prices with the value it perceived as being delivered to both cardholders and merchants. (Tr. at 1983:2-15 (Berry/Amex), 4399:3-4400:2 (Chenault/Amex), 6038:23-6039:7 (McNeal/Amex).) Because these Value Recapture initiatives were not paired with offsetting adjustments on the cardholder side of the platform, the resulting increases in merchant pricing are properly viewed as changes to the net price charged across Amex’s integrated platform. (Tr. at 3985:5-24 (Katz) (noting that without “offsetting changes on the cardholders’ side, . . . the two-sided price [across Amex’s platform], increased”).) Given the low rates of merchant defection observed in response to this initiative, which increased prices that were already at or above the competitive level, Value Recapture illustrates Amex’s “successful exercise of market power.” (Id. at 3985:3-24, 3989:13-3991:15 (Katz) (noting “American Express was starting

from prices that were not below competitive levels” and that these “two-sided price increases were profitable. . . . [as] [t]hey both raised revenues and they raised profits”).)

Taken as a whole, Amex’s Value Recapture initiatives comprised at least twenty separate price increases accomplished through a combination of increased discount rates, new or increased per transaction fees, and reduced side payments to merchants. (PX0121 at ‘459.) The increases were imposed on an industry-specific basis, with several merchant segments—typically those with relatively high rates of cardholder insistence—targeted for multiple rounds of price hikes. (PX1240 at ‘100-04 (overview of VR as of 2010); see, e.g., PX0056-A at ‘237-38 (VR in airlines industry); PX0778 (VR in lodging).) For example, between 2007 and 2010, American Express moved its airline merchants to a higher discount rate table, resulting in the headline discount rates for many airlines rising between 7% and 15% over the four year period, and driving over \$90 million in additional pre-tax income to the network. (PX0056-A at ‘237.) The restaurant industry was also subject to three separate rounds of Value Recapture increases between 2007 and 2010, with individual merchants subject to some combination of the following pricing “levers”: a 5-15 basis point increase in the discount rate, a new 30 basis point “Card Not Present Fee,” and/or a \$0.05 fixed fee per transaction, as well as subsequent expansions of the same. (PX0062 at ‘392-93, ‘395-96.) In whole, the Value Recapture programs targeting restaurants increased prices for at least 280,000 restaurants in the United States. (Tr. at 717:22-24 (Quagliata/Amex); PX0062 at ‘393, ‘395.) In 2009 alone, Amex aimed to increase prices for over one million small merchants and more than 3,000 larger, managed merchants in the United States. (PX0121 at ‘461.) Value Recapture was not limited to T&E industries; Amex also targeted so-called “everyday spend” merchants like supermarkets and retailers. (See, e.g., PX1201 (Giant Eagle); PX0121 at ‘461-62.) On the whole, these price increases affected a

“substantial portion” of Amex’s acceptance network, with merchants accounting for 65% of American Express’s annual charge volume paying higher prices for its network services as a result of Value Recapture. (PX1240 at ‘100; see also PX0121 at ‘459; PX1240 at ‘088 (estimating Value Recapture raised Amex’s average discount rate in the United States by nearly 9 basis points).)

Although American Express’s decision to adjust its pricing in response to perceived increases in its costs on either side of its integrated platform is not itself evidence of market power (see Tr. at 6337:9-17 (Bernheim)), the company’s ability to profitably impose such price increases across a broad swath of its merchant base with little or no meaningful buyer attrition is compelling proof of such power (see id. at 3985:3-3990:12 (Katz)). Notwithstanding the breadth of the Value Recapture program, the court is unaware of any large merchant in the United States that elected to cancel its acceptance of Amex cards in response to the Value Recapture price increases. (Tr. at 2079:6-2080:10 (Berry/Amex), 2675:23-2676:4 (Funda/Amex); PX1099 at ‘555 (noting 100% retention among largest global merchants); see also id. at 4739:25-4740:3 (Glenn/Amex) (testifying that “no large merchants canceled”).) Similarly, in Amex’s Regional Client Group (or its organizational predecessor), which was responsible for managing the accounts of the approximately 9,000 merchants with annual Amex charge volume between \$3 million and \$100 million, the network was able to retain over 99.9% of merchants following Value Recapture increases in both 2009 and 2010. (See PX0706 at ‘676, ‘685; PX1000 at ‘929; Tr. at 622:24-625:5 (Quagliata/Amex).) In 2010, for example, only three merchants in this group voluntarily stopped accepting Amex, and it is not clear whether those decisions were related to Value Recapture. (Tr. at 742:22-746:1.) Finally, among the millions of small merchants without designated Amex client managers, American Express appears to have concluded that Value

Recapture was profitable on the whole, even though the network observed higher rates of cancellation and card suppression among this population when compared to its larger merchants. (PX1753-A at '033; Tr. at 2677:18-2679:20 (Funda/Amex).)

American Express, for its part, contests the Government's assertion that Value Recapture may be viewed as a profitable endeavor. It asserts that the price increases were the result of hotly contested negotiations, and notes that the increases were at least partly offset by significant concessions the network was forced to make to certain large merchants to ensure their continued acceptance of American Express cards, such as deferrals of the rate increases, additional marketing funds, and similar financial consideration. (Tr. at 4401:16-23 (Chenault/Amex), 4740:4-4741:12 (Glenn/Amex); see also PX0121 at '463 (noting usage of such "relief valves" was below projections).) Yet the record concerning the profitability of Value Recapture is clear. Internal Amex documents show that the Value Recapture initiatives resulted in \$1.3 billion in incremental pre-tax income for Amex over the five-year period from 2006 to 2010, and nearly a 9 basis point improvement to Amex's weighted average discount rate in the United States. (PX0357 at '949.) Even after accounting for the concessions Amex paid to retain certain merchant accounts and the forgone profits associated with the minimal merchant cancellations that did occur during the period—whether or not those cancellations are traceable to the price increase—the evidence plainly shows that Value Recapture was profitable on a return-on-investment basis. (PX1753-A at '032-33; PX0008 at '487-89; Tr. at 2688:12-2689:11 (Funda/Amex) (VR for small merchants was profitable when considering merchant attrition, though that determination did not include intangible effects like changing perceptions of coverage among cardholders).) While the court recognizes that Value Recapture likely had certain secondary effects, including implications for the network's ability to acquire new

merchants and cardholders' perception of coverage, Defendants have not shown that these "speculative" or intangible costs rendered the increases unprofitable on the whole. (Tr. at 2683:3-21 (Funda/Amex).)²⁹

Value Recapture was ultimately ended in 2010 by American Express due to merchant dissatisfaction with the price increases given the economic climate at the time and not, it would appear, due to any competitive pressures imposed by Amex's competitors in the GPCC network services market. (See Tr. at 2690:1-24 (Funda/Amex), 5717:11-5718:2 (Gilligan/Amex) (VR ended because "the pain that it was causing to many of our relationships with merchants was not worth the gain").)

2. Price Discrimination

Next, Plaintiffs rely on Amex's ability to price discriminate between various industry groups as evidence of the network's market power. See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 340-41 (noting Visa and MasterCard's ability to "charge differing interchange fees based, in part, on the degree to which a given merchant category needs to accept general purpose cards," in other

²⁹ Specifically, a number of American Express witnesses cited the harm done to the network's relationship with Continental Airlines as evidence of the financial damage caused by Value Recapture, which is not captured in the profitability analyses just described. As part of its Value Recapture initiative in the airline industry, American Express raised Continental's headline discount rate in January 2008 by approximately 10%, which equated to several million dollars in additional discount fees paid by the airline annually. (See PX0056-A at '237; PX0211 at '046; DX3821 at '533, '560-01; PX1033 at '151.) More than two years later, in June 2010, Continental decided not to renew its participation in Amex's Membership Rewards program as a redemption partner, and withdrew from Amex's airport lounge access program, pursuant to which Platinum and Centurion cardholders enjoyed free access to a number of airlines' lounges. (PX1033 at '151; Tr. at 5720:16-5722:8 (Gilligan/Amex).) While these moves were undoubtedly detrimental to American Express's bottom line and the utility of its cards to cardholders (see Tr. at 5721:22-5723:19 (Gilligan/Amex)), Defendants' efforts to establish causation between the VR price increases and the airline's decision to alter its relationship with Amex is not convincing. To the contrary, the contemporaneous record evidence plainly shows that while Continental was unhappy with the magnitude of the price increase imposed years earlier, the primary reason for its withdrawal from Membership Rewards and the lounge access program was to avoid heavy penalties under its new co-brand contract with Chase. (See PX1033 at '151 ("As we've discussed with several members of your team over the past year, any extension of M[embership] R[ewards] is very difficult because of our co-brand agreement with Chase."); see also Tr. at 5471:4-14 (Codispoti/Amex) (testifying that the network was "fairly certain that Continental would exit the [Membership Rewards] program" because of Continental's co-brand relationship with Chase); PX1203-A at '245 ("Re-signing these Amex partnerships would result in significant penalties to Continental from their co-brand issuer (Chase).").)

words, cardholders' credit-insistence, "illustrates their market power"). Yet the court finds such evidence to be of limited probative value in this case.

While it is beyond dispute that American Express sets different prices for merchants depending on the industry segment to which they belong, this fact alone does not prove its market power. As the court previously discussed in connection with Plaintiff's proposed T&E submarket, American Express's practice of charging different prices to different merchant groups is discriminatory only if those prices are unrelated to differences in the costs associated with providing network services to each group. See supra Part III.B. Yet Plaintiffs have not provided a reliable measure of American Express's per transaction margins across its industry groups, and the court accordingly determines there to be inadequate grounds to find price discrimination sufficient to establish antitrust market power. (Tr. at 6347:19-6348:3 (Bernheim).)

Nonetheless, like the district court in Visa I, this court does take note of the ease with which American Express is able to identify and target merchant segments for differential pricing based on its estimates of merchant demand in each industry—demand which, as previously discussed, and as recognized in Visa, is largely a reflection of the degree to which Amex cardholders insist on using their cards.

3. Merchant Pricing Premium

Defendants' express pricing strategy of charging merchants a premium over its competitors' rates presents similar difficulties to the court when proffered as evidence of market power. That American Express may charge a higher price to merchants than Visa and MasterCard, two firms previously found to possess market power in the relevant market, is not necessarily proof that such prices are supracompetitive; merchants may be receiving commensurate value for the higher price, similar to the manner in which Lamborghini and

Toyota both sell cars, but the former can charge a higher price because it offers a differentiated, and ostensibly superior, product. (See Tr. at 5063:7-13, 5086:6-11 (Gilbert).) See also Xerox Corp. v. Media Scis., Inc., 660 F. Supp. 2d 535, 549 (S.D.N.Y. 2009) (noting that “[c]ompetitive markets are characterized by both price and quality competition, and a firm’s comparatively high price may simply reflect a superior product” (quoting Harrison Aire, Inc. v. Aerostar Int’l, Inc., 423 F.3d 374, 381 (3d Cir. 2005))). Here, as discussed below, there is conflicting evidence as to whether American Express still maintains a premium price over Visa and MasterCard and whether that premium, to the extent it exists, represents a supracompetitive price or due compensation for Amex’s higher quality product. Given this ambiguity, evidence relating to Defendants’ premium pricing strategy provides only limited support for a finding of market power³⁰ and is ultimately cumulative support for the court’s conclusion that American Express has had and continues to have market power in the network services market.

The success of American Express’s differentiated business model, according to the network, is largely predicated on its ability to charge a premium over its competitors’ all-in prices to merchants. (See Tr. at 709:15-710:3 (Quagliata/Amex), 2643:15-2644:9 (Funda/Amex) (testifying that the absence of a premium would “stall[] our closed-loop engine . . . of making sure we had enough revenue to invest and differentiate our products”), 3544:15-22 (Silverman/Amex); PX0051 at ‘677 (“Maintaining our rate premium is an integral part of driving positive results to our P&L.”); PX0357 at ‘948, ‘952, ‘960-61 (charging a “reasonable premium” is one of Amex’s core “pricing principles”), ‘953 (describing need for premium to offset scale

³⁰ The probative value of Plaintiffs’ evidence concerning Amex’s pricing premium also is undercut by the fact that it speaks only to one component of the net or two-sided price charged across Defendants’ partially integrated platform—i.e., the merchant discount rate. (See Tr. at 6340:2-7 (Bernheim).) As the court later explains, the evidentiary record does not include a reliable measure of the two-sided price charged by American Express that correctly or appropriately accounts for the network’s expenses on the cardholder side of the platform, from which the court might draw comparisons to Visa and MasterCard’s pricing. See *infra* Part.IV.D.

disadvantages and invest in differentiated product); see also Tr. at 3979:5-7 (Katz) (stating that “[o]ne element of American Express’[s] pricing strategy has been to have premium pricing”).) Indeed, among Amex’s primary justifications for the Value Recapture rate increases between 2005 and 2010 was the erosion of its premium over Visa and MasterCard during the preceding years, which, according to the network, endangered its ability to deliver on its distinct value propositions on both sides of the platform. (See DX7537 at ‘489 (noting Value Recapture was in part “[t]riggered by the on-going decline of our Discount Rate premium”); PX0051 at ‘677.) Nonetheless, American Express has successfully pursued a premium pricing strategy for decades, most recently in 2013—the last year for which data was provided to the court—maintaining an 8 basis point and 3 basis point premium over Visa and MasterCard, respectively, on a mix-adjusted basis.³¹ (See PX2702 at 85.) Historically this premium has been even higher. (See PX0357 at ‘959 (showing premiums between 28 and 89 basis points between 1997 and 2009); Tr. at 3599:8-12 (Silverman/Amex) (noting we “have traditionally earned a premium discount rate”).) Not surprisingly, the magnitude of Amex’s premium varies by industry, with larger premiums maintained in those industries where American Express delivers more insistence-driven value to merchants, such as airlines, rental cars, lodging, and other T&E segments. (See Tr. at 2705:14-2707:24 (Funda/Amex); PX0357 at ‘960; see also PX1240 at ‘091 (illustrating that Amex’s premium pricing is informed in part by the “surplus value” it

³¹ American Express’s merchant discount rates are typically compared to those of its competitors on a mix-adjusted basis, meaning Defendants’ headline rates—which are the same for all Amex card products—are compared on a weighted basis to a comparable “mix” of Visa and MasterCard card products in order to ensure an apples-to-apples comparison. (See Tr. at 919:5-20 (Hochschild/Discover) (agreeing that to fairly compare merchant discount rates one should do an “apples to apples” comparison that compares fees on like card products), 2567:1-22 (Funda/Amex).) Yet the court recognizes that merchants’ acceptance decisions often are not so nuanced; from the merchant’s perspective, the relevant price when comparing the network services provided by the four GPCC networks likely is the total per transaction cost, regardless of what type of Amex, Visa, MasterCard, or Discover card is used. (See, e.g., id. at 385:10-386:5 (Robinson/Ikea), 474:18-477:19 (Satkowski/Enterprise).) Without adjusting for mix, Amex’s premiums appear significantly larger. (See PX2702 at 85.)

delivers to merchants, which the network measures using internal estimates of cardholder insistence).)

American Express rejects Plaintiffs' use of its higher merchant prices as evidence of market power, arguing instead that its premium rates have been and are justified by the differentiated value it delivers to merchants. (See Tr. 3599:8-16 (Silverman/Amex).) American Express does, in fact, deliver on its differentiated value proposition to merchants in many respects. See supra Part I.B. (See also PX1408 at 10 (Amex 2009 Form 10-K).) For instance, Amex delivers, on average, more affluent cardholders who are "ready to spend" at participating merchants.³² In particular, Amex cardholders tend to spend more on average per transaction,³³ spend more on an annual basis per card, and spend more often³⁴ than cardholders on competitor networks. (See DX6576 at 10.) Furthermore, Amex leverages its "closed-loop" model to provide merchants with data analytics, targeted marketing solutions, fraud protection, and other business-building benefits not provided to the same degree by its competitors. (See, e.g., Tr. at 4305:7-4306:17 (Chenault/Amex), 4720:19-4723:15 (Glenn/Amex), 2117:2-2119:4, 2277:4-25 (Berry/Amex); DX7598 at '015-17.)

Yet a number of merchant witnesses at trial disputed the actual value of these additional services, noting, among other things, that American Express can and does sell that same closed-loop data to their competitors as well. (See, e.g., Tr. at 575:8-576:8 (Bouchard/Sears), 2437:3-

³² See PX0111 at '809 (noting average household income for Amex cardholders is 21% higher than that of non-cardholders' households); DX6576 at 10.

³³ Numerous merchant witnesses called by Plaintiffs testified that American Express had the largest average ticket size for any GPCC network. (See, e.g., Tr. at 433:10-12 (Robinson/Ikea), 588:14-18 (Bouchard/Sears), 1297:24-1300:4 (Kimmert/Home Depot), 2347:3-8 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel).) Amex additionally delivers incremental value to airlines and other T&E merchants due in large part to its strong corporate card business. (See PX1601 at '273 (Amex presentation showing its cardholders have "1.6 times more air tickets purchases v. non-Cardholders" and "3.2 times higher spend on air travel"); PX0111 at '809 (Amex presentation stating that its cardholders purchase first or business class tickets 2.3 times as often as non-cardholders).)

³⁴ See DX7238 at '375; Tr. at 3290:5-14 (Biornstad/MasterCard).

2438:10 (Priebe/Southwest), 5375:15-5376:23, 5395:24-5396:21 (Miller/Delta).) In addition, American Express plainly lags its competitors in other aspects of its merchant services, including the speed with which merchants receive payment from the network. (See Tr. at 2581:24-2582:9 (Funda/Amex).) Amex's own biannual survey data on merchant satisfaction indicate that Amex-accepting merchants do not believe they receive commensurate value from the network in return for its higher discount rates. When a representative sample of merchants were asked in 2010 how they would "rate the value" they receive from the three primary networks given the prices they pay, the company found that the "[p]erceived value is significantly higher for Visa/MC than for Amex" among large and small merchants alike. (See PX0043 at '965-66 (showing a "Performance Gap" between Amex and Visa/MasterCard on the cost-value question averaging nearly 20% among managed, unmanaged, and OnePoint merchants); Tr. at 1795:11-1796:13, 1803:11-1804:15 (Ford); see also id. at 1804:21-1807:12, 1811:23-1814:20 (Ford) (finding similar results on "value" in 2006 and 2012 surveys supported the reliability of 2010 results).)

Several American Express executives testified at trial that the network no longer maintains any premium over Visa or MasterCard on a mix-adjusted basis. (See Tr. at 702:7-25 (Quagliata/Amex), 2666:24-2667:2 (Funda/Amex), 4403:4-15 (Chenault/Amex).) However, no data or expert analysis was proffered to substantiate these assertions, and the court is hesitant to rely on the self-interested statements of Defendants' executives absent some form of documentation. (See id. at 6343:19-6344:1 (Bernheim) (relying on prior testimony of Amex executives to support absence of premium, not independent evidence).) Nonetheless, Amex's premium plainly has eroded over time. (See PX0357 at '959.) While this decay can be traced in part to Amex's declining net effective discount rate, which is primarily the result of intentional business decisions by American Express as discussed in the following section, see infra

Part IV.D, the erosion of Defendants' premium is in large part a result of rising prices on Visa's and MasterCard's networks. (PX0357 at '952, '959 (showing more than 80% of erosion due to price increases by Visa and MasterCard); PX0028 at '398; see Tr. at 2667:3-6 (Funda/Amex), 4426:5-4427:22 (Chenault/Amex).) Beginning around 2006, for example, both Visa and MasterCard introduced new premium card categories with higher interchange rates intended to enable issuers to more effectively compete with Amex's high-rewards products. (See PX0028 at '396 (Amex presentation noting "MasterCard and Visa are targeting our premium economics by introducing higher interchange product categories"); DX0447 at '445 (explaining development of Visa Signature products); DX7116 at '788; DX4961 at '306; DX7237 at '015.) Issuing banks promptly and aggressively began converting cardholders to these new premium offerings, shifting Visa's and MasterCard's overall card mixes toward higher interchange categories and—together with new fees charged by the networks—driving up the networks' all-in discount rates. (PX0357 at '939-43; see also id. at '959 (showing Visa's effective all-in rate rose nearly 15 basis points from 2006 to 2009 as issuers moved cardholders to Visa's higher interchange categories).) As Visa's and MasterCard's rates rose, Amex's premium shrunk.

Even if, as Defendants contend, Amex no longer maintains a premium in the network services market, evidence of its historical pricing is nonetheless material to the court's market power analysis. (See Tr. at 4151:17-4152:15, 4256:7-4257:3 (Katz).) In addition, given the manner in which the premium gap was narrowed by Visa and MasterCard over the years, the court cannot credit Amex's argument that the erosion of its premium is compelling evidence of a lack of market power. See also infra Part IV.D. Quite to the contrary, the virtual impunity with which Visa and MasterCard were able to raise their merchant pricing suggests an absence of inter-network competition on the basis of price attributable to rules prohibiting merchant

steering, which is a condition Amex has been able to perpetuate even after Visa and MasterCard abandoned their anti-steering rules as a result of this litigation. Nonetheless, given the absence of clarity with respect to whether Amex maintains a premium in today's market and whether such premium is or has been justified by the network's differentiated value propositions, the court finds Plaintiffs' evidence of Amex's pricing premium to be of limited utility in the present market power analysis.

D. Amex's Remaining Market Power Counterarguments

American Express's remaining arguments regarding whether it possesses antitrust market power are unavailing.

First, to the extent American Express's average effective discount rate has declined over time, that decrease does not show a lack of market power. To the contrary, the record indicates that any reduction in Amex's average effective rate is primarily the result of the network's successful efforts to increase its share of spending at so-called "everyday spend" merchants. (Tr. at 2649:17-2654:19 (Funda/Amex).) These industry segments, which include supermarkets, gas stations, and pharmacies, generally pay significantly lower discount rates to American Express than merchants in the types of T&E industries that traditionally had formed the core of Amex's acceptance network. (Tr. at 2650:9-2651:1 (Funda/Amex); PX0357 at '960.) As the overall mix of merchants at which Amex cardholders were spending shifted toward lower-priced industry groups, the network's average discount rate across all industries fell accordingly.³⁵ (Tr. at 2657:19-2663:1 (Funda/Amex); PX0791 at '144-45 (quantifying negative impact of various types of uncontrollable mix effects on Amex's 2008 and 2009 average discount rates); PX1753-

³⁵ Additionally, it appears that while Amex's average effective discount rate continued to decline during Value Recapture (see Tr. at 5718:3-16 (Gilligan/Amex)), those price increases more than offset all sources of downward pressure on Amex's overall rates except those attributable to changes in mix. (PX1753-A at '029, '034-35 (noting "Value Recapture initiatives continue to offset controllable rate investments globally").)

A at '029.) This was an “intentional move” by American Express, which recognized that changes to its inter-industry mix were the “primary” reason its average discount rate had been declining since the late 1990s. (PX0890 at '338 (“This shift from predominantly T&E to a more balanced industry mix has decreased our overall rate.”); PX0254 at '647; PX0004 at '055.) Amex’s belief that its rate was falling as a result of mix effects was confirmed by Dr. Katz’s analysis. When Plaintiffs’ economics expert controlled for the changing composition of Amex’s merchant base, he found that the network’s average effective discount rate had, in fact, increased slightly over time. (Tr. at 6654:11-6656:2 (Katz); PX2778 at 5.)

Nor is the court is swayed by Dr. Bernheim’s “two-sided price” calculations, which are intended to capture the all-in price charged to merchants and consumers across Defendants’ entire platform on a per transaction basis.³⁶ Defendants’ expert calculates Amex’s two-sided price—which, in Amex’s view, is the proper metric for analyzing price effects in this case—by offsetting the headline discount rates charged to merchants with (1) any payments made to merchants, including payments made pursuant to agreements other than card acceptance agreements, and (2) payments made to cardholders in the form of rewards. (Tr. at 6311:10-6312:13 (Bernheim); DX7828 at 54.) According to Dr. Bernheim’s estimates, American Express’s two-sided price has fallen precipitously since 2002, indicating that in his opinion the network does not possess the power to control price in the relevant market. (Tr. at 6314:10-21 (Bernheim); DX7828 at 56-57.)

These calculations are flawed in a number of respects, however. On the merchant side of the platform, Dr. Bernheim improperly applied billions of dollars in remuneration paid to a

³⁶ Cardholders effectively pay a “negative” price for acceptance services in Amex’s GPCC platform in the form of rewards earned on a per transaction basis. (Tr. at 3852:11-3853:2, 3905:17-3906:5, 4021:16-24 (Katz).) See also Evans & Schmalensee (2007) at 151 (“[P]rofit-maximizing prices may entail below-cost pricing to one set of customers over the long run and, as a matter of fact, many two-sided platforms charge one side prices that are below marginal cost and are in some cases negative.”).

handful of merchants by American Express in connection with its co-brand agreements to reduce the network's average effective discount rate.³⁷ (Tr. at 6657:8-6658:3, 6661:11-24, 6662:3-6663:3 (Katz); PX2778 at 6; see also Tr. at 6556:18-6557:1 (Bernheim).) Payments made to obtain or retain co-brand partnerships—which benefit the issuing side of Amex's business by opening new channels for acquiring cardholders (DX5561 at '128; Tr. at 5420:12-5421:9 (Codispoti/Amex))—should not, in the court's view, be used to offset the price paid by those companies for network services in their capacity as Amex-accepting merchants. (See Tr. at 6658:15-6659:1 (Katz); see also id. at 2717:7-18 (Funda/Amex); PX0842 at '284; PX0999 at '041 ("An issuer co-brand relationship is independent from the card acceptance relationship and needs to support its own value proposition.").) This determination is consistent with American Express's internal business practice of not including the co-brand remuneration identified by Dr. Bernheim when estimating its own effective discount rate. (See, e.g., PX0791 at '144.) Dr. Bernheim's adjustments to Amex's average effective discount rate is enough to render his entire two-sided price calculation unreliable. In addition, however, there also is a sharp disagreement between Drs. Katz and Bernheim regarding the proper measure of payments made to cardholders—i.e., the negative price charged in the form of rewards and other benefits—which further obscures any effort to credibly determine a two-sided price in this market. (See Tr. at 6663:24-6675:17 (Katz), 6312:14-6313:11, 6314:25-6316:9 (Bernheim).) Given these findings,

³⁷ For example, Dr. Bernheim's two-sided price calculations include a one-time \$1 billion pre-purchase of SkyMiles paid by American Express to Delta Airlines—which was effectively an "interest-free loan" intended to provide increased liquidity for the airline—as well as foregone interest on these funds, as an offset to discount revenue. (Tr. at 6656:9-6659:1 (Katz), 5359:16-19 (Miller/Delta), 5658:16-23 (Codispoti/Amex).) Ordinarily, American Express purchases SkyMiles earned on its co-brand card with Delta when the cardholder makes a purchase. Delta itself recognized that payments made pursuant to the co-brand agreement, including the \$1 billion pre-purchase of SkyMiles that was critical to the airline's decision to renew its co-brand partnership with American Express, were not related to the discount rate or Delta's status as an Amex-accepting merchant, but were instead to compensate the airline for marketing, issuing, and other efforts undertaken to promote the co-brand relationship. (See id. at 5330:19-5331:8, 5340:13-5341:4, 5342:19-25, 5345:5-5346:23, 5376:11-20 (Miller/Delta).)

the court cannot conclude that Dr. Bernheim's analysis provides a reliable basis for finding that Amex's two-sided price has declined during any relevant period.

Next, Amex endeavors to distinguish its present position in the network services market from that of MasterCard during the Visa litigation by emphasizing the degree to which it trails its competitors in metrics other than charge volume. Of particular relevance here, American Express contends that its smaller acceptance network—Amex is accepted by roughly 3.4 million merchants at 6.4 million different merchant locations, approximately 3 million fewer locations than Visa, MasterCard, and Discover—belies a showing of market power. (See Jt. Stmt. ¶ 20; DX6576 at 10; PX1985; see also Tr. at 6932:24-6934:2 (Closing Argument).) According to Amex, its merchant coverage gap drives a lower perception of coverage among current and potential cardholders, one which generally trails the network's actual coverage level, and in turn, affects consumers' willingness to acquire and/or use an Amex card. In sum, this deficit represents a significant competitive challenge for American Express in the card issuance market and, indirectly by virtue of the intertwined nature of the two sides of the GPCC platform, affects its ability to compete for share of charge volume in the network services market.³⁸ (See Tr. at 2948:8-2951:5, 2955:13-17 (Pojero/Amex), 4435:24-4437:17, 4395:18-4396:5 (Chenault/Amex); see also id. at 4125:2-9 (Katz) (Dr. Katz agreed that he testified in Visa that "a

³⁸ Similarly, Defendants note that American Express has the fewest cardholders and fewest issuing banks of any major network. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 4; see also Jt. Stmt. § 18; Tr. at 4295:16-21 (Chenault/Amex).) These metrics concern Amex's position in the card issuance market, which was at issue in Visa, but is not directly relevant to the court's analysis in this case. Nonetheless, the court recognizes that Amex's performance in the issuing market undoubtedly, though indirectly, affects its ability to compete against Visa, MasterCard, and Discover in the network services market. The more Amex-branded cards merchants see come through their doors, the more important it is for them to accept American Express; and the breadth of Amex's merchant network, or consumers' perception thereof, influences cardholders' views on the utility of, and thus their willingness to adopt or use, an Amex card. (Tr. at 2960:7-23 (Pojero/Amex); DX7575 at '137; DX6791 at '566.) Additionally, the amount of merchant demand for Amex acceptance is also somewhat affected by the fact that Defendants process fewer transactions than Visa and MasterCard (see DX6576 at 8); however, as discussed previously, the more relevant metric for merchants considering whether to begin or stop accepting American Express is how much Amex cardholders are spending at the point of sale. While these additional metrics present a variety of competitive challenges for Amex, the network's robust share of the network services market when measured by charge volume suggests that these disadvantages have not precluded the network from assuming a dominant position in the relevant market.

system with limited acceptance is of limited value to potential cardholders because of the network effect”).) See Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 387-88 (noting “[m]erchant acceptance, and the consumer perception of merchant acceptance, is vital to a network,” and that increases in both metrics “can lead to an increase in card issuance and transaction volume”). Multiple witnesses, for example, testified to the fact that Amex’s coverage gap in the United States and its effect on the actual or perceived utility of the network’s GPCC cards significantly impedes American Express’s ability to compete with the other networks and/or issuing banks for co-brand, corporate card, and third-party or “GNS” issuing agreements. (See, e.g., Tr. at 2995:21-2997:5 (Pojero/Amex), 4441:21-4442:6, 4438:14-4439:8 (Chenault/Amex).) Yet Amex’s smaller merchant network, while undoubtedly a competitive disadvantage, does not preclude a finding of market power.

In fact, the trial record indicates that American Express’s smaller acceptance network is largely a product of its own business decisions. The network realizes, for instance, that its premium pricing strategy is likely incompatible with 100% merchant coverage, and that this element of its business model remains a “formidable obstacle” in signing new merchants and expanding coverage. (See PX0013 at ‘237; PX1611 at ‘317; DX6791 at ‘565 (noting “[h]igher pricing” is a driver of Amex’s coverage gap); Tr. at 1153:23-1154:21 (Quagliata/Amex), 4810:1-6 (Glenn/Amex).) However, Amex affirmatively has elected not to reduce prices in order to expand merchant coverage due to a concern that existing merchants might demand a lower price if they learn Amex is reducing its price to improve coverage (known as “price spillover”), and a firm belief that the company would be unable to fuel its differentiated business model at a lower price point. (Tr. at 3043:4-3044:1 (Pojero/Amex), 4703:6-4704:3 (Glenn/Amex).)

Other elements of Amex's business also make it less attractive to merchants, and likely contribute to the network's coverage gap.³⁹ For instance, American Express's strategy of having direct contractual relationships with merchants has frustrated its efforts at expanding coverage among small merchants, as merchants traditionally had to deal separately with American Express both in order to join the network and also during the duration of their relationships with Amex. (See DX3750 at '818; Tr. at 3002:13-3004:2, 3096:15-3097:18, 3103:1-4, 3108:2-12 (Pojero/Amex), 4607:12-4609:22 (Chenault/Amex).) Amex was a late adopter of the third-party acquirer model, and only began to work with such acquirers to sign new merchants in 2007—and even then on a limited basis as part of its OnePoint program. (Tr. at 2847:16-2848:19, 3096:8-3098:12 (Pojero/Amex).) The OnePoint program, which is an Amex program aimed at acquiring new merchants, was effective at expanding Amex's merchant coverage (*id.* at 2847:16-2848:16, 3002:13-3004:2, 3097:11-24 (Pojero/Amex), 4810:10-16 (Glenn/Amex)), and Amex's documents signal internal optimism that the network's recent initiatives with acquiring banks—including its OptBlue program, which affords acquirers greater pricing flexibility—will yield similar results and make significant headway in expanding merchant coverage. (PX2745; Tr. at 5756:15-5759:10, 5765:16-5766:22 (Gilligan/Amex).) Indeed, Discover made a similar move around 2005 after the Visa decisions, and subsequently it has been able to close an almost identical coverage gap to near parity with Visa and MasterCard. (Tr. at 813:22-814:5, 824:7-825:10 (Hochschild/Discover), 3931:3-3932:21 (Katz); DX6576 at 10; PX2702 at 65.) Moreover, the record shows that at present, Amex's current acceptance network is able to satisfy

³⁹ As the court previously noted, American Express is also slower to pay funds to merchants on any given transaction as compared to its competitors. (See, e.g., Tr. at 188:6-18, 189:9-12 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 558:9-559:22 (Bouchard/Sears), 2391:3-2392:6 (Priebe/Southwest); see also *id.* at 2582:1-3 (Funda/Amex) (“We recognize here there are parts of our business that are actually less attractive to merchants than Visa and MasterCard and speed of pay is one.”).)

a substantial portion—94%—of its cardholders’ GPCC spending needs.⁴⁰ (Tr. at 4440:21-4441:7 (Chenault/Amex); PX0924 at ‘809; see also PX1412 at 8 (Amex 2013 Form 10-K).)

Defendants similarly dispute a finding of market power on the grounds that the acquisition and retention of larger merchants is often the product of extended and intense negotiations. However, the fact that some merchants have some degree of leverage when negotiating with American Express does not disprove that the network possesses antitrust market power. Even monopolists are sometimes required to negotiate with their consumers.⁴¹ (See also Tr. at 4268:14-4269:12 (Katz).) American Express nonetheless places significant emphasis on the fact that it negotiates “every term” of its acceptance agreements with certain large merchants, see supra Part I.C (discussing certain negotiated exceptions to Amex’s NDPs), and that the network is sometimes compelled to make monetary concessions in the form of signing bonuses, cooperative marketing funds, and volume incentives that yield lower effective discount rates in order to ensure the merchants’ continued acceptance of Amex cards. (Tr. at 5951:15-5954:15 (McNeal/Amex); see also id. at 2292:7-2293:11 (Berry/Amex).) Yet these pricing concessions are often quite small when compared to the discount fees paid to American Express under the new agreements (see id. at 215:10-22 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 1667:10-15 (Brennan/Hilton),

⁴⁰ When merchant acceptance is evaluated by the percentage of merchants that accept GPCC cards that also accept Amex, which is referred to as “Locations in Force Coverage,” or “LIF Coverage,” American Express’s coverage among GPCC-accepting merchants is below 80%. (See Tr. at 2945:25-2946:20 (Pojero/Amex).) However, LIF Coverage is not weighted by charge volume, which distorts the relevance of this statistic; when calculating LIF Coverage, for example, Delta Airlines and the corner florist are given equal weight. (See id. at 2852:24-2853:7 (Pojero/Amex); see also id. at 4802:13-4803:2 (Glenn/Amex) (discussing concerns with integrity of LIF data).) Spend coverage, by contrast, reflects Amex’s estimate of how much of its cardholders’ credit card spending could be accommodated at merchants that accept American Express relative to the cardholders’ overall GPCC spending. (See PX1412 at 8; Tr. at 1159:7-1160:8 (Quagliata/Amex), 4440:21-4441:7 (Chenault/Amex).)

⁴¹ See Toys “R” Us, 221 F.3d at 930, 932, 936-37 (affirming FTC’s finding of market power notwithstanding the fact that the defendant firm was forced to negotiate with manufacturers in order to impose the challenged restraint); United States v. Grinnell Corp., 236 F. Supp. 244, 254, 257 (D.R.I. 1964), aff’d in relevant part, 384 U.S. 563, 576 (1966) (finding the defendants monopolized their industry even though they had “not always been able to receive the standard they [had] set for themselves, the so-called ‘Minimum Basic Rates’, . . . or annual service charges” due to “fringe” competition); see also Microsoft, 253 F.3d at 51-56 (finding Microsoft had monopoly power), and Deiter v. Microsoft Corp., 436 F.3d 461, 468 (4th Cir. 2006) (noting that the “prices that [Microsoft’s] customers paid were negotiated and, as a consequence, were both discounted and unique to each transaction”).

2386:21-2390:18 (Priebe/Southwest); PX2661 (demonstrative)), and they frequently come with strings attached that limit their value to a merchant (see, e.g., Tr. at 2385:5-2386:20 (Priebe/Southwest), 5911:5-11 (Flueck/Starwood Hotels); DX7278 at ‘889 (detailing restrictions on the use of marketing funds)). Though certain large merchants do receive lower effective discount rates as a result of such negotiations, when viewed against the breadth of Amex’s merchant base and the relative infrequency with which Amex makes meaningful pricing concessions, the court does not view evidence of Amex’s willingness to negotiate certain terms in their acceptance agreements to bar a finding of market power.

Lastly, the Government’s admission that Discover lacks market power does not compel a similar finding as to American Express, even if both networks share certain characteristics. With only a 5.3% share of the network services market, for example, Discover cannot leverage its loyal cardholder base into an ability to control prices or restrict output. Merchants can profitably drop Discover if the network overplays its hand. (See, e.g., Tr. at 457:2-8 (Robinson/Ikea), 504:18-23 (Satkowski/Enterprise) (“[W]e’re fully comfortable that if we were to eliminate the Discover brand that we will not see any loss in business.”), 1608:7-13 (Brennan/Hilton) (testifying that it would be easier to drop Discover due to the lower volume of spending on Discover cards than on Amex).) As previously discussed, that is not the case for the majority of merchants with regard to American Express, given its share of spending. Similarly, Discover’s ability to raise its discount rates in a number of industries to levels that match or exceed the prices charged by Visa and MasterCard is not necessarily proof of that network’s market power. If anything, Discover’s rationale for raising its prices and its ability to do so illustrate an absence of price competition in the network services market. See infra Part V.B.

* * *

In sum, the court concludes that American Express possesses sufficient market power in the general purpose credit and charge card network services market to satisfy Plaintiffs' initial burden under the rule of reason. Even if this were not the case, however, Plaintiffs alternatively may (and do) discharge their burden under the rule of reason by proving actual adverse effects on competition that are attributable to the NDPs, to which the court now turns.

V. ADVERSE EFFECTS ON COMPETITION

Plaintiffs additionally have proven that the NDPs have caused and continue to cause actual harm to competition in the network services market. As described below, American Express's merchant restraints sever the essential link between the price and sales of network services by denying merchants the opportunity to influence their customers' payment decisions and thereby shift spending to less expensive cards. With the NDPs in place, merchants lack any meaningful means of controlling their consumption of network services in response to changes in price, short of dropping acceptance altogether. Thus, by disrupting the price-setting mechanism ordinarily present in competitive markets, the NDPs reduce American Express's incentive—as well as those of Visa, MasterCard, and Discover—to offer merchants lower discount rates and, as a result, they impede a significant avenue of horizontal interbrand competition in the network services market. On the basis of the record developed at trial, the court finds that the challenged restraints have impaired the competitive process in the network services market, rendering low-price business models untenable, stunting innovation, and resulting in higher prices for merchants and their consumers.

Proof of anticompetitive harm to merchants, the primary consumers of American Express's network services, is sufficient to discharge Plaintiffs' burden in this case. Cf. F.T.C. v. H.J. Heinz Co., 246 F.3d 708, 719 (D.C. Cir. 2001) (“[N]o court has ever held that a reduction in

competition for wholesale purchasers is not relevant unless the plaintiff can prove impact at the consumer level.”); United States v. Dentsply Int’l, Inc., 399 F.3d 181, 190 (3d Cir. 2005); Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 340-42 (finding plaintiffs satisfied their initial burden with regard to the network services market by showing a likelihood of harm to merchants). In this case, Plaintiffs additionally are able to show harm to those same merchants’ customers on the other side of the GPCC platform, as inflated merchant discount rates are passed on to all customers—Amex cardholders and non-cardholders alike—in the form of higher retail prices. See infra Part V.C. To the extent American Express argues that the NDPs foster rather than impede competition, particularly with regard to competition in the separate but interrelated issuing market (including that market’s co-brand, corporate card, and bank issuer aspects), the court views such arguments as potential pro-competitive justifications for the challenged restraints, and assesses them in that context. See infra Part V.E.

For the reasons set forth below, the court finds that Plaintiffs have discharged their initial burden under the rule of reason by proving the challenged restraints have caused “actual, sustained adverse effects on competition.” Ind. Fed’n of Dentists, 476 U.S. at 460-61 (noting this determination is “legally sufficient to support a finding that the challenged restraint [is] unreasonable even in the absence of elaborate market analysis”); see also Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 96 (outlining the “two independent means by which [Plaintiffs may] satisfy the adverse-effect requirement,” including “show[ing] an actual adverse effect on competition”); K.M.B. Warehouse, 61 F.3d at 128-29; Todd, 275 F.3d at 206. Additionally, in conjunction with the court’s finding that American Express possesses market power in the network services market, the findings of fact contained in this section also establish the “other grounds to believe that the defendant’s behavior will harm competition market-wide,” K.M.B. Warehouse, 61 F.3d at 129,

necessary to satisfy the indirect avenue of discharging Plaintiffs' initial burden. See also Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 97; Flash Elec., Inc. v. Universal Music & Video Distrib. Corp., 312 F. Supp. 2d 379, 394 (E.D.N.Y. 2004).

A. The NDPs Impede Horizontal Interbrand Competition

The Sherman Act is premised on a congressional determination that “unrestrained interaction of competitive forces will yield the best allocation of our economic resources, the lowest prices, the highest quality and the greatest material progress.” N. Pac. Ry. Co. v. United States, 356 U.S. 1, 4 (1958); Standard Oil Co. v. F.T.C., 340 U.S. 231, 248 (1951) (“The heart of our national economic policy long has been faith in the value of competition.”). Among the central facets of this system is competition on the basis of price—a recognition that suppliers can, and often do, offer lower prices to induce buyers to purchase their goods or services rather than those of a competitor. See United States v. Socony-Vacuum Oil Co., 310 U.S. 150, 224 n.29 (1940) (referring to price competition as the “central nervous system of the economy”); Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 692 (same); see also Anza v. Ideal Steel Supply Corp., 547 U.S. 451, 482 (2006) (Breyer, J., concurring in part and dissenting in part) (“The basic objective of antitrust law is to encourage the competitive process. In particular, that law encourages businesses to compete by offering lower prices, better products, better methods of production, and better systems of distribution.”). Price competition is a critical avenue of horizontal interbrand competition, and yet it is frustrated to the point of near irrelevance in the network services market as a result of American Express’s NDPs. By suppressing the incentives of its network rivals to offer merchants, and by extension their customers, lower priced payment options at the point of sale—short of triggering defection, merchant demand for network services

is largely unresponsive to changes in price unless merchants are able to steer customers among the GPCC networks—American Express’s merchant restraints harm interbrand competition.

American Express’s merchant restraints impede competition by severing the typical link between merchants’ demand for network services and the price charged for the same. In a competitive market, for example, one would expect to see changes in price result in higher or lower demand for or output of the product or service being sold, depending on the nature of the price change. Here, by contrast, the NDPs disrupt the normal price-setting mechanism by reinforcing an asymmetry of information between the two sides of the payment card platform. Amex’s rules ensure that the set of customers responsible for driving demand for network services (cardholders) cannot be influenced in their payment choice by the set of customers on the other side of the platform, who are informed of and responsible for paying the swipe fees associated with that decision (merchants). In other words, with the NDPs in place, customers do not internalize the full cost of their payment choice or account for the costs of different forms of payment when deciding which form to use, because without merchant steering, the cost to the customer is the same regardless. Deprived of any meaningful ability to regulate their own consumption of network services in response to differences in network pricing, merchants are left with an all-or-nothing acceptance decision: either agree to be a passive consumer of American Express’s network services, or refuse to accept Amex cards altogether. (Tr. at 2595:11-23 (Funda/Amex).) And once an affirmative decision has been made, merchants’ ability to leave the network in response to subsequent increases in the price of Amex’s network services—the only means by which merchants can exercise price discipline on American Express—is materially impeded by the readiness of Amex cardholders to shop elsewhere if

unable to use their card of choice. See supra Part IV.B (discussing the restraining effect of cardholder insistence).

In disrupting the price-setting mechanism in this market, American Express's NDPs suppress its network competitors' incentive to offer lower prices at the approximately 3.4 million merchants where American Express is currently accepted, vitiating an important source of downward pressure on Defendants' merchant pricing, and resulting in higher profit-maximizing prices across the network services market. (See Tr. at 3821:11-3822:4, 3846:3-15 (Katz).)

Steering is a lynchpin to inter-network competition on the basis of price. Without the ability to induce merchants to shift share in response to pricing differentials, a credit card network like Discover cannot increase sales or gain market share by offering merchants a more attractive price than its competitors. (Tr. at 832:9-23 (Hochschild/Discover) ("Once you have acceptance at th[e] merchant, lowering your price . . . does not drive incremental sales.")) In effect, Amex's NDPs deny its competitors the ability to recognize a "competitive reward" for offering merchants lower swipe fees, and thereby suppress an important avenue of horizontal interbrand competition. (Id. at 3821:11-3822:4 (Katz).) In the absence of steering, therefore, each of the credit card networks is largely insulated from the downward pricing pressure ordinarily present in competitive markets. Indeed, the record demonstrates that the NDPs create a competitive environment in which there is virtually no check on the networks' incentive or ability to charge higher prices to merchants, so long as the network's pricing is below the level at which a rational merchant would drop acceptance entirely.

American Express itself recognizes the absence of competition on the basis of merchant pricing in the network services market. (See Tr. at 2667:22-2668:8 (Funda/Amex) ("I don't think anybody's business strategy is to be cheaper than the next guy."); PX0038 at '702 ("We

should not compete on costs with V[isa]/M[asterCard].”).) The conceptual value-based methodology used by American Express in developing its pricing strategy, for example, does not account for any downward pressure associated with its competitors’ swipe fees. (Tr. at 2595:11-2597:14 (Funda/Amex); PX1240 at ‘091.) Quite to the contrary, Amex uses Visa’s and MasterCard’s rates as a floor when evaluating its own discount rate in various industries. The three major networks similarly felt no pressure to lower their own prices or otherwise respond to Discover’s efforts in the late 1990s to build its share in the network services market by offering merchants prices well below those charged by its competitors. (See Tr. at 3821:11-3822:13 (Katz); 2665:4-2666:6 (Funda/Amex); PX0357 at ‘944-46 (Amex document listing pressures on Visa and MasterCard pricing).) See also infra Part V.B.

Merchants also recognize the dysfunction in the network services market. Restrained by Amex’s anti-steering rules, merchants cannot inject price competition into the network services industry by encouraging their customers to use their lowest cost supplier, as they can in other aspects of their businesses. (See, e.g., Tr. at 223:9-224:22 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 381:8-382:18 (Robinson/Ikea).) As described by one merchant witness, the “the market is broken” because the GPCC networks do not compete on the basis of merchant pricing. (Tr. at 2440:4-15 (Priebe/Southwest); see also id. at 832:1-17 (Hochschild/Discover) (noting that once a GPCC network has secured merchant acceptance, “lowering your price . . . does not drive incremental sales”).) Indeed, the impetus for Defendants’ decision in the early 1990s to strengthen the NDPs suggests an anticompetitive intent in doing so. See supra Part I.C.1 (discussing Amex’s efforts to block rivals’ efforts to shift share by engaging in preference campaigns). See also Chi. Bd. of Trade, 246 U.S. at 238 (encouraging courts to consider “[t]he history of the restraint, the evil believed to exist, the reason for adopting the particular remedy, the purpose or end sought to be

attained . . . not because a good intention will save an otherwise objectionable regulation or the reverse; but because knowledge of intent may help the court to interpret facts and to predict consequences”); Dentsply, 399 F.3d at 196; Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 401, 404-05 (considering Visa and MasterCard’s intent in enacting the exclusionary rules in rejecting proffered pro-competitive justifications).

The history of Amex’s enforcement of its NDPs illustrates the manner in which prohibitions on merchant steering adversely affect price competition. In response to the growth of American Express’s network in the early 1990s, Visa recognized a need to “do a better job of telling the Visa story to merchants” in order to more effectively compete with Amex’s new, premium card offerings. (PX0132 at ‘882.) As part of these competitive efforts, Visa sought to call merchants’ attention to what it viewed as a “key Amex vulnerability”: namely, American Express’s higher merchant discount rates. (PX0132 at ‘879-80, ‘882; Tr. at 3317:15-3318:15 (Morgan/Visa).) For example, the “Profit Improvement Calculator” that Visa provided to its merchants during this period framed the price difference between Visa and Amex as potential profit for the merchant, and invited merchants to capture that incremental benefit by developing “inoffensive, yet effective” means of steering their customers to Visa at the point of sale. (Tr. at 3318:16-3321:20 (Morgan/Visa); PX0082 at ‘543.) Visa also encouraged merchants to shift share to its network through the “We Prefer Visa” campaign, by which prominent merchants stated an express preference for Visa cards, in addition to more traditional forms of point-of-sale steering, such as posting signage that favors the merchant’s preferred form of payment (short of making an explicit statement of preference) or asking customers, “Would you like to put this on your Visa?” (See Tr. at 3321:21-3323:6, 3325:9-3326:3 (Morgan/Visa); PX0133 at ‘985; see also PX0082 at ‘544.) For those merchants that chose to participate, these competitive efforts

were markedly successful at shifting spend to Visa's network. (See Tr. at 3843:5-9 (Katz), 4487:7-16 (Chenault/Amex); DX7595 at '637; PX0133 at '986; see also Tr. at 3327:18-3328:2, 3330:3-8 (Morgan/Visa).) Yet notwithstanding the range of possible pro-competitive responses to Visa's steering campaigns available to Defendants, including reducing Amex's discount rate or improving its messaging to better communicate to merchants the value they received for the premium price charged,⁴² Amex's primary response was to bolster its contractual restraints on merchants in order to stifle any further steering or preference campaigns. (See Tr. at 4490:13-4491:18, 4492:16-4493:14, 4499:6-4504:20, 4531:17-4532:11 (Chenault/Amex); PX0163 at '030, '032-33, '035-36 (document reflecting Amex brainstorming on potential responses to preference campaigns); DX7595 at '639-40.)

American Express observes these same facts and insists that preference campaigns, like the "We Prefer Visa" initiative, represent a form of competition that is rightly suppressed by its NDPs. Dr. Bernheim, for example, testified that such campaigns should not be viewed as competition on the merits because they have the effect of undermining consumers' perception of the value of a competitor's product rather than building the value of one's own product. (See Tr. at 6421:20-6422:19 (Bernheim); see also id. at 5059:24-5060:1 (Gilbert).) The court disagrees. As an initial matter, it is not for the court to draw lines between "good" competition and "bad" competition in the network services market; the federal antitrust laws reflect a steadfast "legislative judgment that ultimately competition will produce not only lower prices, but also better goods and services." Nat'l Soc'y of Prof'l Eng'rs, 435 U.S. at 695; see also F.T.C. v. Superior Court Trial Lawyers Ass'n, 493 U.S. 411, 423-24 (1990) (rejecting proffered justifications for agreement among lawyers to fix fees, even though "the quality of

⁴² In Dr. Katz's view, these responses, some of which Amex did pursue to a limited degree, represent competition on the merits. (Tr. at 3843:10-19 (Katz).)

representation” might have been improved as a result). As explained by the Supreme Court, “[t]he statutory policy underlying the Sherman Act ‘precludes inquiry into the question whether competition is good or bad.’” Trial Lawyers, 493 U.S. at 424 (quoting Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 695); see also N. Pac. Ry. Co., 356 U.S. at 4 (stating “the policy unequivocally laid down by the [Sherman] Act is competition”). The court further recognizes that merchants will be amenable to a network’s invitation to steer only if they perceive an economic justification for doing so—for instance, if one network offers lower prices, or is willing to offer a lower price in exchange for merchants’ efforts to shift share, or if the network’s pricing structure incentivizes the merchant to focus its charge volume on that network in order to qualify for a rate reduction tied to charge volume. During the “We Prefer Visa” campaign, for example, the evidence suggests that merchants responded positively to Visa’s messaging because American Express was, in fact, markedly more expensive to accept than Visa. (See Tr. at 3317:15-3318:15 (Morgan/Visa), 3842:19-3843:4, 3844:1-14 (Katz); PX0132 at ‘879-80, ‘882.)

Nonetheless, Amex’s anti-steering rules continue to block pro-competitive efforts by its network rivals to gain share by incentivizing merchants to engage in preference relationships. For example, when American Express enforced its NDPs in 2003 to prevent Travelocity from stating on its website that “Travelocity Prefers MasterCard” pursuant to a preference agreement with that network, it undermined the online travel agency’s ability to direct additional share to MasterCard and diminished the “value of MasterCard as Travelocity’s preferred brand,” resulting in the merchant receiving less financial remuneration from MasterCard. (Tr. at 3244:1-3252:2 (Biornstad/MasterCard); PX0385; PX1324.) See also supra Part I.C.2. After Travelocity was compelled to change its promotion to refer to MasterCard as an “Official Card,” rather than its preferred form of payment, the partners’ joint television, print, and radio

advertising touting the partnership “basically stopped” and MasterCard saw a reduction in the share being shifted to its network. (Tr. at 3248:17-3249:4 (Biornstad/MasterCard).) As described by Dr. Katz, this change represented “a lessening of competitive pressure” in the relevant market, and exemplifies the manner in which rules against steering reduce competition among the credit card networks. (Id. at 3844:15-3845:1 (Katz).)

In sum, by preventing merchants from influencing their customers’ payment choices, Defendants’ anti-steering rules render merchant demand for network services less responsive to changes in the price charged for those services. In so doing, the NDPs effectively remove the incentive for American Express or its network competitors to compete with one another by offering merchants a lower price, as without merchant participation in the point-of-sale payment decision, a lower price will not translate into increased volume for the network. In undermining the competitive process and price-setting mechanism in the market for GPCC card network services, the challenged restraints impede a critical form of horizontal, interbrand competition.

B. The NDPs Block Low-Cost Business Models

American Express’s merchant restraints also render it nearly impossible for a firm to enter the relevant market by offering merchants a low-cost alternative to the existing networks. Indeed, the failure of Discover’s low-cost provider strategy in the 1990s provides direct evidence of how anti-steering rules like Defendants’ NDPs impede modes of competition that likely would benefit consumers on both sides of the GPCC platform. Amex’s rules effectively deny another GPCC network—whether Discover or a potential new entrant—the opportunity to pursue a business model that differentiates itself by offering merchants a low price in return for greater volume.

Discover launched in 1985 by offering a combination of breakthrough value propositions: Cardholders could receive the first GPCC card with a rewards feature at no annual fee, and merchants were offered a low-price alternative to the existing GPCC networks. (Tr. at 821:8-16 (Hochschild/Discover).) Discover pursued its low-price strategy by pricing its network services “very aggressively for merchants,” setting all-in discount rates significantly below those of its competitors. (Id.)

Sensing an increase in merchant dissatisfaction in the late 1990s amidst a series of price increases by its competitors, Discover saw an opportunity to leverage its position as the lowest-priced network to gain share. (See id. at 832:24-835:17 (Hochschild/Discover); PX1277 at ‘094.) See also Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 333 (noting Discover’s status as the lowest priced network). In 1999, the network launched a “major campaign” aimed at highlighting the pricing disparity between it and its competitors in order to persuade merchants to “shift their business to [Discover’s] lower-priced network.” (Tr. at 833:4-11 (Hochschild/Discover).) In a speech before an industry group in April 1999, David Nelms, then-President of Discover, outlined the network’s plan: Discover intended to partner with merchants in helping them control payment costs and proposed that they steer customers to the lower-cost Discover cards. (Id. at 834:13-20 (Hochschild/Discover); PX1277 at ‘090, ‘094-95 (noting Discover wanted “to help [merchants] save money by encouraging their customers to pay with Discover Card”).) To that end, Discover sent a letter to every merchant on its network, alerting them to their competitors’ recent price increases and inviting the merchant to save money by shifting volume to Discover. (Tr. at 836:6-837:18 (Hochschild/Discover).) Discover representatives also met with a number of larger merchants to offer discounts from the network’s already lower prices if they would steer customers to Discover. (Id. at 837:2-25 (Hochschild/Discover).) The network suggested a

number of means by which merchants could achieve this share shift, including point-of-sale signage (id. at 839:22-842:3 (Hochschild/Discover); PX1292 at ‘991-94), and also suggested that merchants use the savings to lower their own prices and thereby invest in generating customer loyalty for themselves (Tr. at 847:8-848:14 (Hochschild/Discover)). The additional volume recognized as a result of these efforts would be Discover’s reward for offering lower prices to its merchant base. (See id. at 3836:9-3838:18 (Katz); see also id. at 837:19-25 (Hochschild/Discover) (Discover believed offering further discounts to large merchants would be profitable for the network by virtue of greater transaction volume, and resulting increases in discount and interest revenue).)

Discover’s efforts, however, failed to produce “any significant movement in share” due to the anti-steering rules maintained at the time by Visa, MasterCard, and American Express. (Tr. at 848:15-849:15 (Hochschild/Discover).) In its conversations with a number of merchants, Discover learned that the merchant restrictions imposed by the other payment networks denied merchants the ability to express a preference for Discover or to employ any other tool by which they might steer share to Discover’s lower-priced network. (Id. at 848:15-849:15, 852:24-853:15 (Hochschild/Discover) (“[T]he limitations placed by the other networks didn’t give [merchants] any effective strategies to shift share.”); see also PX0075 at ‘028-29, ‘032 (“Merchants have largely not responded to simple, low prices and our challenge to drive Discover share.”).) Notably, Defendants do not strenuously dispute the evidence regarding the effect of anti-steering rules on Discover’s low-price model, or that such restrictions effectively raise a barrier to entry in the relevant market for firms pursuing a low-price strategy.

Recognizing that its lower prices would not drive incremental volume to its network in a market subject to limitations on merchant steering, Discover abandoned its low-price business

model in 2000 and began raising discount rates in order to more closely align its merchant pricing with that of Visa and MasterCard. (Tr. at 853:19-854:15 (Hochschild/Discover); see also id. at 832:1-23 (Hochschild/Discover) (testifying that “lowering your price . . . does not drive incremental sales”).) In the company’s view, “[t]o the extent that offering a lower price was not going to give [Discover] any business benefits, it was leaving money on the table.” (Id. at 854:7-15 (Hochschild/Discover) (noting that giving merchants a “discount without getting anything in return didn’t make business sense”).) Discover described this transition in its internal documents as a move from a “Low Cost Provider Strategy” to a strategy titled “Close Competitive Gap,” pursuant to which Discover raised its average effective discount rate nearly 24% from 2000 to 2007. (PX1285 at ‘474; Tr. at 862:1-24 (Hochschild/Discover).) Today, Discover’s prices are similar to those offered by Visa and MasterCard, and the network has also adopted the more complicated “unbundled” pricing model used by those networks. (See id. at 863:25-864:8 (Hochschild/Discover).)

In the court’s view, the failure of Discover’s low-price value proposition is emblematic of the harm done to the competitive process by Amex’s rules against merchant steering.⁴³ Since customers can neither independently access nor account for the costs of different forms of payment when deciding which to use, a lowest-cost provider strategy cannot succeed in the network services market if merchants are unable to shift share among the various networks. (See Tr. at 853:19-22 (Hochschild/Discover), 3821:13-3822:13, 3840:24-3841:10 (Katz).) Absent merchant participation in the point-of-sale payment decision, a supplier in the network services

⁴³ The court, of course, recognizes that prior to the consent decrees entered into by Visa and MasterCard in this case, both networks also maintained anti-steering restrictions akin to Amex’s NDPs, and that all three networks’ restraints likely contributed to Discover’s decision to abandon its low-price model. Yet, based on the testimony adduced at trial, the court finds that a similar outcome is likely in a market subject to American Express’s NDPs alone, even if these restraints do not cover every merchant in the United States. (See Tr. at 3841:3-9 (Katz).)

market cannot realistically expect to receive any competitive benefit for offering a price below that of its competitors, even if such a move would benefit merchants and their customers alike.

C. The NDPs Have Resulted in Higher Prices to Merchants and Consumers

American Express's merchant restraints have allowed all four networks to raise their swipe fees more easily and more profitably than would have been possible were merchants permitted to influence their customers' payment decisions. Beyond Plaintiffs' evidence concerning the manner in which the NDPs undercut the competitive process, the record demonstrates that these restraints have resulted in higher all-in merchant prices across the network services market, providing additional proof of their actual anticompetitive effect.

Plaintiffs have established, for instance, that American Express's prohibitions on merchant steering aided the network's efforts to profitably raise its discount rates on merchants accounting for 65% of the network's annual U.S. charge volume as part of its Value Recapture initiatives in the late 2000s. (See PX0121 at '459.) By precluding merchants from directing transactions to other networks, Amex's merchant restraints blocked an important safety valve that would have moderated its efforts to increase discount rates. (See Tr. at 3846:1-15, 3850:8-17 (Katz).) Among large merchants, for example, American Express did not even account for the possibility that merchants would respond to its price increases by attempting to shift share to a competitor's network when assessing the likely profitability of Value Recapture, and instead considered only whether merchants would cease acceptance altogether as a result of the initiative. (See id. at 3849:10-3850:17 (Katz); PX1099 at '555.) By contrast, at smaller merchants where the network had greater difficulty monitoring steering or suppression of its cards, Amex did consider the effect steering would have on its ability to profitably increase price, and concluded that such efforts would not defeat the repricing initiative. (See Tr.

at 3846:1-15, 3847:8-3849:9 (Katz); PX1753A at ‘033.) Merchant testimony presented at trial confirmed that were large merchants able to do so, they would have attempted to steer customers away from American Express to blunt the effect of Amex’s price hikes. (See, e.g., Tr. at 2418:3-17 (Priebe/Southwest); see also id. at 3851:1-12 (Katz).) In preventing such mitigation, the NDPs were integral to American Express’s Value Recapture increases and thereby caused merchants to pay higher prices.

American Express disputes that its premium discount rates are supracompetitive, faulting Plaintiffs for evaluating only the merchant side of the GPCC platform and not proffering empirical evidence that the NDPs have resulted in a higher two-sided price—i.e., that the price charged across Amex’s entire platform, accounting for both discount revenue and the expense of providing cardholder rewards, increased as a result of the network’s anti-steering rules. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 9-10.) Yet, as the court has previously noted, neither party has presented a reliable measure of American Express’s two-sided price that appropriately accounts for the value or cost of the rewards paid to cardholders. See supra Part IV.D. Even without such data, however, Plaintiffs have provided sufficient circumstantial evidence and expert testimony for the court to conclude that Amex’s Value Recapture price increases were not wholly offset by additional rewards expenditures or otherwise passed through to cardholders, and resulted in a higher net price. (See Tr. at 3853:3-3854:17, 4039:16-4040:20 (Katz) (economic theory supports a finding that where, as here, prices are inflated due to buyers being less responsive to price, “there will be less than a hundred percent passthrough” and that “networks are going to keep some of [the higher discount rate] for themselves”).) Indeed, Amex’s Chief Financial Officer told investors in June 2013 that Amex “drop[s]” part of its premium to the bottom line even as it invests part in creating value for cardholders. (PX1475 at 2; see also Tr. at 3853:3-24 (Katz).)

Dr. Katz further concluded that American Express spends less than half of the discount fees it collects from merchants on cardholder rewards. (Tr. at 3853:3-24 (Katz).)

Even if Amex did fully pass through the higher discount fees attributable to its NDPs to cardholders, the court finds that prohibitions on merchant steering—including Visa and MasterCard’s anti-steering rules, which were abandoned as a result of this case—have also enabled American Express’s competitors to charge higher all-in fees. Visa and MasterCard, for instance, were able to increase their average all-in merchant rates through a variety of means by more than 20% from 1997 to 2009, without fear of other networks undercutting their prices in order to gain share. (PX0357 at ‘959; Tr. at 2663:24-2665:3 (Funda/Amex).) Similarly, after Discover was forced to abandon its low-price strategy as a result of its competitors’ merchant regulations, that network was able to radically increase its merchant pricing over a relatively short period of time, in order to match the rates set by its competitors. See supra Part V.B. Discover was able to raise its rates with virtual impunity, relying on the restraining effect of anti-steering rules to ensure that it would not be undercut by a competitor offering a lower price to merchants. These examples provide further support for the court’s finding that without affording merchants the ability to influence their customers’ credit and charge card decisions, there is little, if any, downward pressure on the price charged to merchants.

The NDPs have also resulted in increased prices for consumers. Merchants facing increased credit card acceptance costs will pass most, if not all, of their additional costs along to their customers in the form of higher retail prices. (See Tr. at 3840:10-23, 3854:18-3855:25 (Katz) (testifying that “an economically rational merchant is going to pass [the higher costs of accepting payments] on to its customers,” and “prices are going to go up with the merchant for everybody”); see also id. at 1405:22-1407:11 (Rein/Walgreen); DX2214 at ‘983.) See also

Freedom Holdings, Inc. v. Cuomo, 624 F.3d at 38, 56 (2d Cir. 2010) (noting a “tax increase, like any cost, will likely be passed on to consumers in the form of higher prices”); F.T.C. v. H.J. Heinz Co., 246 F.3d 708, 719 (D.C. Cir. 2001) (“[T]he antitrust laws assume that a retailer faced with an increase in the cost of one of its inventory items ‘will try so far as competition allows to pass that cost on to its customers in the form of a higher price for its product.’” (quoting In re Brand Name Prescription Drugs Antitrust Litig., 123 F.3d 599, 605 (7th Cir. 1997))). Higher retail prices affect not only those customers who use American Express cards, but also shoppers who instead prefer to pay using a lower-rewards GPCC card, debit card, check, or cash. (Tr. at 3854:18-3855:25 (Katz).) Even if American Express passed through every cent of its premium or the incremental revenue realized from its Value Recapture price increases to cardholders—which it does not—customers who do not carry or qualify for an Amex card are nonetheless subject to higher retail prices at the merchant, but do not receive any of the premium rewards or other benefits conferred by American Express on the cardholder side of its platform. (See Tr. at 3852:3-3853:17 (Katz), 5252:10-5253:13 (Gilbert); PX1475 at 2.) Thus, in the most extreme case, a lower-income shopper who pays for his or her groceries with cash or through Electronic Benefit Transfer—and the same is true of any consumer who does not use an Amex card or comparable high-rewards product from Visa, MasterCard, or Discover—is subsidizing, for example, the cost of the premium rewards conferred by American Express on its relatively small, affluent cardholder base in the form of higher retail prices. See generally Adam J. Levitin, Priceless? The Economic Costs of Credit Card Merchant Restraints, 55 UCLA L. Rev. 1321, 1356 (2008) (noting this cross-subsidy is also highly regressive). The court views this externality as another anticompetitive effect of Defendants’ NDPs.

D. The NDPs Stifle Innovation

Plaintiffs additionally point to evidence from a number of merchant witnesses in support of their theory that Amex's NDPs stifle innovation in the network services market. See Visa II, 344 F.3d at 241 (affirming district court's finding that defendants had harmed competition because "product innovation . . . ha[d] been stunted by the challenged policies"); Aventis Env't. Sci. USA LP v. Scotts Co., 383 F. Supp. 2d 488, 504 (S.D.N.Y. 2005) (noting "retardation of innovation and subsequent decrease in the quality of [defendant's product] . . . could qualify as a harm to competition and consumers"). This argument is less convincing than the theories discussed above. Many of the examples cited by Plaintiffs as evidence of its innovation theory—including efforts by at least two merchants to deploy new technologies that would allow them to steer customers to lower-cost cards by updating in real time the price displayed to the customer based on the form of payment presented at the point of sale—do not relate to stifled improvements in the network services provided to merchants, but instead illustrate novel forms of steering that have been unable to thrive under the NDPs. (See Tr. at 3158:4-3171:9 (Gibson/Sinclair) (discussing Sinclair's proposal to "roll back" prices on gasoline pumps and on their mobile commerce application depending on the type of card used by the customer), 6144:14-6151:7 (Mitchell/Official Payments).)

But other examples of stunted innovation in the relevant market are more pertinent to the court's antitrust analysis. For example, Defendants' NDPs and similar anti-steering rules formerly maintained by Visa and MasterCard are responsible for inhibiting the development of several proposed merchant-owned payment solutions. Project Monet, for example, was a network venture proposed by Discover in the early 2000s, whereby merchants would receive equity in the network and be able to directly control their payment costs by influencing future

pricing decisions. (Tr. at 838:20-839:11 (Hochschild/Discover).) Similarly, a group of forty large retailers have recently created a joint venture under the name Merchant Customer Exchange (“MCX”) to develop a new payment platform that would operate on customers’ mobile devices and significantly reduce the participating merchants’ payment processing costs. (Id. at 2433:6-2435:4 (Priebe/Southwest).) Both ventures have been impeded by restrictions on merchant steering. Project Monet was ultimately abandoned by Discover when it became clear that merchant-investors would be unable to encourage customers to use the preferred cards by traditional forms of steering (id. at 956:11-17 (Hochschild/Discover)), and under the NDPs, MCX’s capacity to develop a viable brand as the low-cost alternative to traditional GPCC cards is endangered by merchants’ inability to “compar[e] and contrast[]” MCX’s payment services with those offered by American Express (id. at 2436:1-20 (Priebe/Southwest)).

Accordingly, while the court finds limited evidentiary value in Plaintiffs’ innovation theories that relate to new and novel forms of steering, American Express’s anti-steering rules—and those previously maintained by Visa and MasterCard—are responsible for impeding development of novel payment solutions that would have injected or potentially may inject greater diversification into the network services industry, and thus improve the quality of offerings therein.

E. Removal of the NDPs Would Benefit Merchants and Consumers

Elimination of American Express’s anti-steering rules would restore merchants’ responsiveness to changes in network pricing, and, in turn, unlock an important avenue of competition among the credit card networks. Plaintiffs have proven through direct and circumstantial evidence that not only are merchants and networks likely to engage in point-of-sale steering if the NDPs are lifted, but also that such activities will inure to the benefit of both

merchants and customers alike. American Express's efforts to discredit Plaintiffs' proposed "but for" world are unavailing.

American Express itself recognizes the pro-competitive benefits of steering. Defendants regularly use such tactics in American Express's travel agency business, which is one of the largest in the United States, to reward certain of its airline, hotel, and car rental vendors with increased travel volume in return for offering a lower rate or entering into a "preferred supplier" relationship with Amex. (Tr. at 3460:7-3461:23, 3467:2-3468:15, 3472:4-11, 3473:2-5 (Corbett/Amex); see also PX1685 at '686 (noting "we try to sell and promote only preferred suppliers, and we actively sell away from nonpreferred suppliers" and that "what keeps our preferreds coming back to us is their fear of how aggressive we actually are against nonpreferreds"); PX1007 at '930-31, '941-42, '947 (discussing successful Amex travel agency campaign to shift share away from a British airline, which included an agreement with a competitor airline to lower rates in return for increased share).) Merchant steering in the network services market has also been to Amex's own benefit. For instance, in the early 1990s Amex entered into a preference relationship with Ticketmaster whereby phone operators for the merchant would inform callers: "Our card of choice is American Express. Would you like to use your American Express card today?" (See PX2766; PX0355 at '411; see also, e.g., PX0150 at '036 (Amex entered into a sponsorship relationship with Radio City Music Hall whereby the venue informed patrons that "Radio City Welcomes the American Express Card" and designated one box office window exclusively for the use of Amex cardholders); PX2602 at '938, '944-45, '950 & Tr. at 4557:4-4572:4 (Chenault/Amex) (Amex contracted to be the "Official Payment Services Product Provider" for Universal Studios Theme Park Properties, which involved

multiple forms of steering, including offering discounts on certain food, beverages, and merchandise when using an Amex card).)

Providing merchants the freedom to participate in their customers' payment decisions will foster greater interbrand competition among the GPCC networks and restore downward pressure on their merchant prices. Eager to control the costs associated with running their businesses, merchants routinely seek lower prices for necessary goods and services by promoting competition among multiple suppliers, often by rewarding competitive bidders with increased purchase volume. (See, e.g., Tr. at 219:6-223:22 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 381:2-382:18 (Robinson/Ikea), 1343:22-1347:13 (Rein/Walgreen).) Similar competition cannot be generated in the network services market under the NDPs, however, despite the fact that credit card fees represent a significant cost for many merchants. (See id. at 192:9-21, 224:11-22 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 381:11-18, 387:1-7 (Robinson/Ikea), 1222:5-17 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 1347:14-16 (Rein/Walgreen), 1608:14-18 (Brennan/Hilton), 2318:22-2319:17 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel), 2440:5-15, 2440:23-2441:3 (Priebe/Southwest).) Were merchants able to direct a greater share of their charge volume to lower-cost credit or charge card networks, whether by offering discounts to customers for using such cards, posting the relative costs of different modes of payment, or engaging in another form of point-of-sale steering, they would be better able to control and lower their costs of credit card acceptance. (See id. at 1276:4-8 (Kimmet/Home Depot).)

Depending on the magnitude of the charge volume available to be shifted at any given merchant, removal of the NDPs would also restore the networks' incentive to offer merchants lower rates in the hope of capturing additional share. (See id. at 1614:22-1617:7 (Brennan/Hilton) (discussing Hilton's potential partnership with Visa by which Visa "would

offer a rebate back on the interchange fees collected” at the end of the year “if [Hilton] could increase Visa’s relative share of Hilton charge volume”); see also Tr. at 3258:25-3259:13, 3298:7-13 (Biornstad/MasterCard) (noting MasterCard likely would pursue preference relationships with select vendors if permitted), 3845:6-14 (Katz).) For larger merchants, in fact, the networks may be induced to competitively bid for the additional share the merchant is able to funnel to a preferred (and likely cheapest) payment network. (See id. at 408:24-409:17 (Robinson/Ikea), 2328:10-2329:7 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel); see also id. at 3670:10-25 (Silverman/Amex) (discussing competitive bidding process by which merchants invite networks and partner banks to compete for co-brand partnerships).) Even if a merchant were not inclined to engage in steering, its freedom to do so in the future would enhance its bargaining position relative to American Express and its competitor networks, placing additional downward competitive pressure on rates. (Id. at 581:4-8 (Bouchard/Sears), 2353:14-2354:11 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel), 3219:17-22 (Gibson/Sinclair).)

The restoration of downward competitive pressure on merchant prices would, in the court’s view, result in lower swipe fees charged to merchants by American Express and its competitors. Indeed, American Express itself recognizes that several of its larger merchants desire the ability to steer volume to less expensive networks, and that removal of its NDPs may require Amex to reduce its premium discount rates. (See Tr. at 2738:4-20 (Funda/Amex); see also PX0701 at ‘584 (U.S. Airways asked Amex to remove the NDPs during negotiations for a new acceptance agreement); PX1846 at ‘018-19, ‘087 (Southwest tried to modify the NDPs in its acceptance agreement); PX0842 at ‘285 (internal Amex email stating United Airlines “insists on right to preference Amex competitors that have lower discount rates and this of course is unacceptable to us”).) For example, when Congress signaled in 2010 that it might permit

merchants to engage in differential discounting among GPCC card brands as part of the Dodd-Frank Act,⁴⁴ the network recognized that one “strategic option[]” included “[r]emov[ing the] [e]conomic incentive for merchants to discount/cancel” American Express by “selectively (by industry) reduc[ing]” American Express’s discount rate “to the point where discounting or cancelling is not economically advantageous for merchants.” (PX0090 at ‘473; see also PX1176 at ‘383-84 (considering potential responses to “[m]itigate the likelihood of merchants . . . offering incentive to use another form of payment,” including lowering discount rates in “high-risk” industries); PX1239 at ‘943 (noting differential discounting would put pressure on Amex’s rates).) Amex witnesses also testified that the network would face increased pressure to reduce its rates if merchants could shift share to a less expensive network. (See Tr. at 702:3-10 (Quagliata/Amex), 2693:25-2694:4, 2694:20-23 (Funda/Amex).) In addition, Discover’s President and Chief Operating Officer, Roger Hochschild, testified that his network would “aggressively pursue a strategy of lowering [its] prices” were merchants permitted to steer transactions to Discover. (Tr. at 872:3-17 (Hochschild/Discover); see also id. at 3841:13-3842:6 (Katz) (stating it would be economically rational for Discover to lower prices in the absence of the NDPs because steering “would increase [Discover’s] incentives to lower prices” by unlocking the ordinary competitive reward for doing so).)

Removal of the NDPs would also benefit consumers. In the short term, consumers would benefit by taking advantage of the inducements offered by merchants in order to sway their card choice. For instance, by agreeing to pay with a merchant’s preferred card, customers might receive a 5% discount off of the retail price when using MasterCard (id. at 526:5-13 (Satkowski/Enterprise)), a free night at a hotel or day of rental car use for using Visa or Discover (id. at 1616:11-20 (Brennan/Hilton), 497:12-498:18 (Satkowski/Enterprise)), free shipping when

⁴⁴ Such a provision ultimately was not included in the Durbin Amendment.

they use American Express, designated checkout lanes when paying with Discover (id. at 845:3-10 (Hochschild/Discover)), or any number of other offers or inducements used by merchants to direct transactions to a preferred network. Ultimately, and essentially, it is the customer's decision whether to accept the merchant's offer or to pay with his or her card of choice. Thus, even if a merchant is inclined to steer away from American Express, the cardholder would still have the freedom to use an Amex card if the cardholder decides the rewards offered by American Express are of greater value than the discount, in-kind perk, or other benefit offered by the merchant. (See Tr. at 6678:1-6680:10 (Katz) (consumers would benefit from having options because "it is giving the cardholder more choice, more chance to decide . . . whether he or she wants to get the rewards for that given purchase . . . from the card issuer or whether he or she would rather get some sort of reward from the merchant, for example").)⁴⁵ Allowing merchants to actively participate in their customers' point-of-sale decisions would remove the artificial barrier that now segregates merchant demand from the price of network services, and allow merchants and cardholders alike to jointly determine how the prices charged on each side of the GPCC platform weigh against one another. In the longer term, the court expects that merchants will pass along some amount of the savings associated with declining swipe fees to their customers in the form of lower retail prices. (See Tr. at 382:19-383:7 (Robinson/Ikea), 1278:1-

⁴⁵ See also id. at 688:23-689:12 (Quagliata/Amex) (testifying that if steering were allowed, "cardmembers will still have a choice"), 2736:14-2737:18 (Funda/Amex) (agreeing that, if merchants were permitted to offer discounts by card brand, customers would have a choice of benefits and could "make a decision one way or another"), 6188:14-25 (Mitchell/Official Payments) (Official Payments offers customers discounts for using cheaper cards with the understanding that customers "can make their own choice as to whether they want to use their rewards card or not or if it is more important for them at that moment in time to save some money"); PX1176 at '379 ("With selective discounting, the risk of loyal Amex Cardmembers walking away (not returning) is much lower; they are being offered a discount but still allowed to use Amex if they prefer.").

14 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 1346:19-1347:13 (Rein/Walgreen), 3150:15-25 (Gibson/Sinclair Oil); cf. id. at 3840:10-23, 3854:18-3855:25 (Katz).⁴⁶

Underpinning this “but for” world lies a determination that, without Amex’s contractual restraints, merchants actually are likely to steer customers between various forms of payment or GPCC networks. The costs associated with accepting credit and charge cards are among many merchants’ highest, and accordingly they have a strong economic incentive to take steps to reduce these expenses as much as possible without alienating either the networks or customers. (Tr. at 192:14-21 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines) (Alaska Airlines’s credit card costs are approximately twice as much as its U.S. labor costs, and more than what it spends on food and beverages), 387:1-7 (Robinson/Ikea) (payment acceptance costs are Ikea’s fourth highest cost, after labor, advertising, and rent), 2318:22-2319:23 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel).) To that end, multiple merchant witnesses testified that they have asked American Express in the past to relax its NDPs and grant them greater freedom to participate in their customers’ card choices. (See, e.g., id. at 264:4-15 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 1257:25-1258:19 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 1541:11-15 (O’Malley/Best Buy), 1697:13-1698:13 (Dale/Sprint).) Other merchants testified that they would, in fact, steer if given the opportunity. (See id. at 497:12-499:25 (Satkowski/Enterprise), 580:9-581:18

⁴⁶ To the extent merchants realize cost savings as a result of steering, Defendants dispute that any degree of merchant savings will be passed on to customers in the form of lower retail prices. Primarily, Amex relies on a report by the Reserve Bank of Australia (“RBA”) from April 2008 that noted there was no “concrete evidence” that cost savings attributable to the RBA’s decision to regulate interchange rates and expressly permit surcharging in Australia had been passed on to consumers. (See DX4026 at 23; Tr. at 5817:18-5820:22 (Gilligan/Amex).) Yet when read in its entirety, the RBA’s report actually supports the court’s determination that lower discount rates resulting from removal of the NDPs will benefit consumers as merchants translate some amount of their lower credit card costs into lower prices. In full, the RBA noted that “[n]o concrete evidence has been presented to the [RBA] regarding the pass-through of these savings, although this is not surprising, as the effect is difficult to isolate. The Bank had previously estimated that the cost savings would be likely to lead to the CPI being around 0.1 to 0.2 percentage points lower than would otherwise be the case over the longer term (all else constant). It is very difficult to detect this against a background where other costs are changing by much larger amounts and the CPI is increasing by around 2 1/2 per cent per year on average. Despite the difficulties of measurement, the Board’s judgment remains that the bulk of these savings have been, or will eventually be, passed through into savings to consumers. This judgement is consistent with standard economic analysis which suggests that, ultimately, changes in business costs are reflected in the prices that businesses charge.” (DX4026 at 23 (emphasis added).)

(Bouchard/Sears), 1613:23-1614:7 (Brennan/Hilton).) Moreover, the trial record further establishes that many merchants, whether subject to Amex's standard NDPs or to a customized version, attempt to steer customers to the extent permitted under their respective acceptance agreements. (See id. at 1537:8-1540:4, 1541:11-23 (O'Malley/Best Buy) (Best Buy steers toward its private label card at the point of sale, to the extent permitted under its customized NDPs), 1699:5-1702:6 (Dale/Sprint), 2324:21-2326:25 (Bruno/Crate & Barrel) (noting his company has reduced its overall cost of acceptance "considerably" by steering to a private label card).)

American Express sharply disputes Plaintiffs' theory that merchant discount rates and retail prices would decrease in the absence of the NDPs. Specifically, Defendants point to the roughly 3 million merchant locations that comprise Amex's merchant coverage gap, where merchants today are free to engage in steering as a result of the consent decrees entered into by Visa and MasterCard in this case.⁴⁷ (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 14-15; see also Tr. at 6456:10-6457:17, 6459:13-20 (Bernheim).) Amex correctly notes there is little evidence of widespread steering at these merchant locations, or that price competition among the networks has increased in the four years since Visa and MasterCard agreed to abandon their anti-steering rules for the merchants operating these locations. (See Tr. at 4237:3-11, 4240:10-13 (Katz), 6456:10-6457:17 (Bernheim). But see PX1337A at '054-58, '073-82; Tr. at 6144:14-6146:21 (Mitchell/Official Payments) (discussing Official Payments's efforts to exploit this opportunity).) Indeed, it appears likely that discount rates at these locations have continued to rise during this period. (Tr. at 950:7-16 (Hochschild/Discover), 6457:5-17 (Bernheim).)

⁴⁷ Although Discover retains its anti-steering rules at nearly all of these locations, the court does not view those provisions as a significant explanation for the lack of merchant steering, as discussed later in this section.

Yet the court cannot agree with American Express that the “natural experiment” occurring at these three million merchant locations is an accurate predictor of the consequences of eliminating American Express’s NDPs. First, the testimony received at trial indicates that Discover did, in fact, study the feasibility of lowering its prices at these merchants in the wake of Visa’s and MasterCard’s consent decrees in order to induce steering. (Tr. at 985:23-987:4 (Hochschild/Discover).) But upon learning that its 100 largest merchants remained bound by Amex’s NDPs, the network concluded that it did not make business sense to continue pursuing these opportunities. (*Id.*) The court declines to second-guess Discover’s business judgment in this regard, which appears to be a reasonable conclusion given the present state of the network services market. Moreover, as Discover indirectly found, the vast majority of the locations identified by American Express are very small merchants, often with potential annual Amex charge volume well below \$50,000.⁴⁸ The court finds little predictive value in the fact that these merchants have not yet begun widespread steering given that: (1) there is no indication that the Government or any GPCC network took meaningful steps to alert these small business owners of their new freedom to participate in their customers’ card choices; (2) the potential savings for merchants of this size would be small and may well be outweighed by the costs of steering; and (3) small merchants ordinarily have very little, if any, direct contact with the GPCC networks. (*See* Tr. at 4231:14-4235:22 (Katz).) Rather, it is more likely that large merchants will be the vanguard of widespread steering in the United States, as occurred in Australia after the Reserve Bank of Australia issued regulations capping interchange rates and permitting merchants to differentially surcharge among the various credit card networks—a particularly strong form of

⁴⁸ *See* Tr. at 2859:19-22, 3002:13-3004:2 (Pojero/Amex) (“[M]ost of the[] merchants in the gap are very, very small merchants. . . . The vast majority sit well below [\$]20,000 in AMEX annual charge volume potential.”); PX0021 at ‘127 (showing 91% of the gap is made up of merchants with under \$50,000 in annual Amex volume); PX0890 at ‘353-54 (noting 75% of merchants in the gap are “probably half the size” of “your local florist”).

steering not sought by Plaintiffs in this case. (See Tr. at 5811:3-19, 5813:5-5814:14, 5817:11-16 (Gilligan/Amex); PX1126 at ‘629.) Today, however, the vast majority of these large merchants remain bound by Amex’s NDPs. Finally, the court notes that American Express’s insistence that steering would be unlikely to occur in the absence of its NDPs is wholly inconsistent with the dire consequences it suggests could result from their removal. See *infra* Part VI.A.

The court is similarly unconvinced by American Express’s position that practical hurdles to steering would defeat merchants’ efforts to promote price competition among the credit card networks. For example, Amex argues that even if merchants wished to post their costs of accepting GPCC cards on the various networks at the point of sale, they likely would be unable to do so accurately, since few merchants are able to understand the complicated product-based pricing structures used by Visa, MasterCard, and Discover. (See, e.g., Tr. at 651:15-652:21, 675:2-16 (Quagliata/Amex), 5549:17-5550:10 (Landau/DryBar).) Yet this concern appears to rest on an overgeneralization (see, e.g., *id.* at 385:10-386:19 (Robinson/Ikea), 2380:11-20, 2381:20-2382:4 (Priebe/Southwest)), and the court believes that Amex’s competitors and/or the merchant’s acquiring bank or processor would be in a position to provide merchants with an accurate measure of their true costs of acceptance were there demand for such information (i.e., in a world where steering was allowed) (see *id.* at Tr. 651:1-10, 662:24-664:9 (Amex calculated Riggins Oil’s “all in net effective Visa/MasterCard discount rate” using the merchant’s statements from its acquiring bank), 664:16-665:16 (Quagliata/Amex), 916:14-19, 922:18-923:8 (Hochschild/Discover)).⁴⁹ Further, to the extent American Express is concerned that unsophisticated merchants might steer customers away from the network based on “a prevailing

⁴⁹ Similarly, the fact that some larger merchants with custom acceptance agreements with American Express would ultimately choose not to disclose their negotiated effective discount rates at the point of sale due to confidentiality concerns (see, e.g., Tr. at 1306:9-1307:3 (Kimmet/Home Depot), 2211:22-2212:3 (Haslam/OfficeMax)), does not establish that this particular form of steering would not be pursued by the millions of merchants subject to Amex’s standard rate tables.

misperception . . . among merchants as to what they’re paying for Visa/MasterCard versus American Express”—in other words, that merchants incorrectly believe they are paying more to accept American Express when compared to its competitor networks—the fault for allowing such a misconception to persist and the burden for remedying it lies with Defendants. (*Id.* at 675:17-676:8 (Quagliata/Amex).) Even if the practical difficulties of steering were as significant as Defendants suggest, the record provides several examples of how new technologies under development by several merchants, including real-time pricing tools being developed by Official Payments and Sinclair Oil (Tr. at 3158:4-3171:9 (Gibson/Sinclair) (discussing Sinclair’s “roll back” pricing technology at gasoline pumps and its new mobile commerce application), 6144:14-6151:6 (Mitchell/Official Payments)), would help overcome any remaining logistical hurdles to interbrand competition associated with merchant steering.

Finally, the court does not find that Discover’s anti-steering policies represent a meaningful impediment to the type of inter-network competition likely to result from removal of the challenged restraints. Unlike American Express, Discover has never sought to enforce its anti-steering rules or threatened to terminate a merchant for attempting to influence a customer’s card choice. (Tr. at 984:16-985:3 (Hochschild/Discover).) Discover has also suggested that it may not enforce its anti-steering rules were Plaintiffs to prevail in this suit, and may abandon them altogether. (*Id.* at 866:12-867:1, 985:13-22 (Hochschild/Discover).) In any case, even if Discover were inclined to prevent merchants from steering, it likely would be unsuccessful given the network’s relatively low market share. (*See id.* at 369:22-370:12 (Thiel/Alaska Airlines), 504:1-23 (Satkowski/Enterprise), 1544:14-23 (O’Malley/Best Buy); *see also id.* at 1608:7-13 (Brennan/Hilton) (testifying “[i]t would be easier to drop Discover than American Express . . . [because t]he volume of charges that come through on Discover are far less than through

American Express”), 4226:18-4227:14 (Katz) (noting it would be difficult for Discover to enforce its anti-steering rules if merchants were particularly motivated to steer due to a significant pricing disparity given Discover’s low market share).)

* * *

In sum, Plaintiffs have proven by a preponderance of the evidence that American Express’s Non-Discrimination Provisions have imposed actual, concrete harms on competition in the credit and charge card network services market. The challenged restraints interrupt the ordinary price-setting mechanism in this market by taking away a network’s reward for competing on the basis of price, and thereby removing any network’s incentive to do so. In rendering merchants less responsive to changes in price, the NDPs ensure that no competitor will attempt to differentiate itself by being the lowest cost supplier, and consequently result in higher prices for merchants and their customers. This conduct is prohibited by Section 1 of the Sherman Act.

VI. PRO-COMPETITIVE JUSTIFICATIONS

Upon Plaintiffs’ discharging their burden to establish that American Express possesses market power in the network services market and that the challenged restraints have caused actual anticompetitive harm therein, “the burden shifts to the defendants to offer evidence of the pro-competitive effects of their agreement.” Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 507. However, as Judge Jones aptly noted in Visa, “the broad sweep of the rule of reason ‘does not open the field of antitrust inquiry to any argument in favor of a challenged restraint that may fall within the realm of reason,’” but rather, “‘focuses directly on the challenged restraint’s impact on competitive conditions.’” Visa I, 163 F. Supp. 2d at 344 (quoting Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 688). In the event Defendants provide a valid justification for the challenged

restraints, Plaintiffs must prove either that the challenged restraints are not reasonably necessary to accomplish Defendants' legitimate objective(s), or that the same objective(s) may be "achieved by less restrictive alternatives, that is, those that would be less prejudicial to competition as a whole." Capital Imaging, 996 F.2d at 543; Visa II, 344 F.3d at 238. The rule of reason then requires the court to "engage in a careful weighing of the competitive effects of the agreement—both pro and con—to determine if the effects of the challenged restraint tend to promote or destroy competition." Geneva Pharm., 386 F.3d at 507; see also Capital Imaging, 996 F.2d at 542-44.

Here, Defendants propose two pro-competitive justifications for its NDPs, arguing that the restraints are reasonably necessary (1) to preserve American Express's differentiated business model and thus the company's ability to drive competition in the network services market, and (2) to prevent merchants from "free-riding" on the network's investments in its merchant and cardholder value propositions. For the reasons set forth below, these purported justifications do not offset, much less overcome, the more widespread and injurious effects of the NDPs on interbrand competition in the relevant market.

A. Defendants' Ability To Drive Competition

American Express first proposes that its anti-steering rules are necessary to ensure its cardholders enjoy a frictionless and consistent point-of-sale experience when using their American Express cards—what the network terms "welcome acceptance"—which it asserts is critical to the survival of Amex's differentiated business model. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 24-25; Tr. at 4477:12-20 (Chenault/Amex), 6356:10-6357:24 (Bernhiem); see also id. at 4943:9-4945:20, 4961:11-17 (Hayes/Amex) (noting "welcome acceptance" is central to Amex's brand promise).) By delivering a unique set of products and services to its merchants and cardholders, Amex argues that its premium, spend-centric model has served as a key driver of innovation and

competition in the marketplace as its competitors have attempted to mimic Amex's successes. (See Tr. at 5115:1-21 (Gilbert), 6397:12-6398:4 (Bernheim).) Therefore, according to Defendants, the NDPs are defensible under Section 1 of the Sherman Act because they safeguard American Express's ability to compete effectively in the credit card industry, and thereby enhance interbrand competition. For the reasons that follow, the court finds that Defendants' proffered justification is neither legally cognizable nor supported by the record.

Amex's theory of pro-competitive effect largely rests on the proposition that, were the network unable to rely on the NDPs to control merchants' conduct toward its cardholders at the point of sale, the company's ability to pursue its differentiated business model would be invariably and irreparably harmed. (Tr. at 4477:12-20 (Chenault/Amex).) Specifically, Amex suggests that if merchants are permitted to "discriminate" at the point of sale by encouraging its cardholders to use another form of payment—which, in Defendants' view, is a "negative" payment experience for the customer, regardless of how that steering is accomplished—its cardholders will be less likely to use their Amex cards, not only at the steering merchant, but also on subsequent transactions due to the effects of spillover. (See Tr. at 3067:14-3068:12 (Pojero/Amex), 4787:12-4788:25 (Glenn/Amex)); see also id. at 928:16-24 (Hochschild/Discover) (agreeing that, from a network's perspective, attempts at point-of-sale steering can damage a network's relationship with its cardholder).) As merchants shift share away from American Express to less expensive alternatives,⁵⁰ the network theorizes, it could

⁵⁰ Defendants view a freely competitive network services market—that is, one without the NDPs—as inherently tilted toward Visa and MasterCard, given those networks' ubiquity and scale advantages. (See Tr. at 4434:21-4435:10 (Chenault/Amex) ("The reality is it's a total[ly] unlevel playing field.") For instance, Amex contends that because Visa and MasterCard have more cards in force when compared to American Express, merchant steering will be a one-way street away from Amex, since merchants will not be willing to steer customers toward a card their customers may not have. (See id. at 4475:22-4478:12 (Chenault/Amex); 6097:2-6098:20 (McNeal/Amex).) As a factual matter, Amex is correct that Visa and MasterCard have more cards in circulation. Moreover, an Amex cardholder almost always has a Visa or MasterCard product in his wallet, but the reverse is not true to the same extent. (See Jt. Stmt. ¶ 18; Tr. at 4193:2-8 (Katz).) Yet Defendants' inferential leap that this disparity will render

enter a “downward spiral” that would endanger the viability of its differentiated business model, and by extension, its ability to promote competition in the credit card industry. Specifically, the argument proceeds as follows: If merchants are permitted to steer, all merchants will see fewer customers presenting Amex cards at the register due to spillover effects; as the importance of accepting Amex cards declines, fewer merchants will do so; declining merchant coverage will negatively affect cardholders’ perceptions of coverage and card utility; and, as a result, Amex’s ability to acquire new cardholders and drive spending by existing cardholders will erode, leading to further degradation of Amex’s acceptance network, and so on. (See, e.g., Tr. at 4477:12-4478:12 (Chenault/Amex), 5752:19-24, 5833:7-17 (Gilligan/Amex).) Therefore, in American Express’s view, removing the NDPs and opening the door for unrestricted competition on merchant pricing invites the demise of its differentiated model.

According to American Express, the prospect of a negative feedback loop resulting from removal of the NDPs is exacerbated by the spend-centric nature of its current business model. Defendants posit that any decline in the network’s discount revenue—whether attributable to declining charge volume or a decision to reduce discount rates—will impair the company’s ability to invest in its premium value propositions and continue to differentiate itself in the marketplace. (See Tr. at 3771:24-3772:25 (Silverman/Amex).) Defendants aver that the company’s ability to deliver a differentiated product to both sides of the GPCC platform, including its premium cardholder rewards, is not only an important means of limiting merchants’

them unable to compete in a market where merchants can steer customers among the various card brands lacks support in the record. First, Amex’s predictions about merchant willingness to steer customers to its network is belied by the steering toward Amex that already occurs in the co-brand and “Official Card” contexts. Additionally, there is no evidence in the record that merchants would be unwilling to attempt to steer customers if some customers do not carry their preferred form of payment. In other words, if merchants were economically incentivized to steer toward American Express—for example, due to lower discount rates or other remuneration—merchants may well be willing to undertake such efforts even if fewer than 100% of their customers would be able to take advantage of the offer.

willingness to steer and cardholders' responsiveness to such efforts (see Tr. at 3717:19-3718:20, 3772:13-3773:12 (Silverman/Amex) (“[W]e would be in a vicious cycle where we would be cutting benefits that we believe are absolutely critical and then we’d be in an even worse place where merchants are steering against us and we don’t even have benefits and services that are unique and competitive in the marketplace.”)), but also supposedly ensures that American Express is able to continue serving as a competitive check on what Defendants view as the effective duopoly of Visa and MasterCard (Tr. at 3541:1-19 (Silverman/Amex) (noting that to compete “[i]n a network effect business like this, you’re either the biggest or you’re the best,” and discussing the necessity of Amex’s ability to differentiate itself from its competitors), 4719:18-4720:18 (Glenn/Amex) (testifying that Amex has focused on providing differentiated value to overcome Visa’s and MasterCard’s scale advantage)). American Express accordingly views the challenged restraints as reasonably necessary to preserve its existing business model, and theorizes that removing these protections from its merchant contracts would threaten its ability to drive innovation and compete effectively with the dominant firms in the credit card industry, thereby harming overall interbrand competition.

To the extent Defendants maintain that the NDPs drive interbrand competition in the credit card industry, they focus primarily on the interrelated card issuance market. (See Tr. at 3544:1-3545:6 (Silverman/Amex) (describing issuing business as “fiercely competitive”), 6415:11-25 (Bernheim).) For example, Defendants repeatedly stressed at trial that competition among American Express and various network/issuer tandems (e.g., Citibank and Visa) for co-brand relationships is intense. These ventures are often subject to a competitive bidding process, and a large merchant looking for a new co-brand partner may expect to receive between six and eight competitive bids in addition to Amex’s proposal. (See Tr. at 3670:10-25, 3672:21-3673:14

(Silverman/Amex) (describing “competition for . . . co-brand relationships” as “brutal”).) Even in this limited context, Amex’s competitors enjoy a number of structural advantages. Visa and MasterCard possess broader acceptance networks, and the issuing banks are able to leverage their existing banking relationships with both merchants and prospective cardholders in order to design more attractive bids. (See Tr. at 3673:15-3675:6 (Silverman/Amex).) Assuming, as Amex does, that clearing the way for price competition on the merchant side of the credit card platform—by removing the NDPs—would cause Amex’s coverage gap to grow and place pressure on its ability to include generous remuneration packages in its co-brand proposals, Defendants would be further disadvantaged in the race to secure these lucrative contracts, and interbrand competition would suffer. (Tr. at 3676:2-3677:12 (Silverman/Amex).) Defendants assert that a similar dynamic would play out in the third-party issuer and corporate card segments should the NDPs be stricken, resulting in less overall interbrand competition, not more.

Though perhaps intuitively appealing, Defendants’ putative justification is inconsistent with both the law and the factual record. It is axiomatic that the federal antitrust laws “were enacted for ‘the protection of competition, not competitors.’” United States v. Apple Inc., 952 F. Supp. 2d 638, 709 (S.D.N.Y. 2013) (emphasis in original) (quoting Brown Shoe, 370 U.S. at 320).⁵¹ American Express recognizes as much, and insists that it prohibits merchant steering and thereby preserves its differentiated business model not for its own sake, but for competition’s sake. Yet the underlying premise of Defendants’ position highlights the flaw in this theory—i.e., that Amex’s current business model could not survive if exposed to the full spectrum of interbrand competition. To find the NDPs to be reasonable restraints on trade because they

⁵¹ See also Tops Mkts., 142 F.3d at 97 (noting “[t]he Sherman Act protects competition as a whole in the relevant market, not the individual competitors within that market”); Stamatakis Indus., Inc. v. King, 965 F.2d 469, 471 (7th Cir. 1992) (stating the antitrust laws exist to “protect consumers from suppliers rather than suppliers from each other”).

shield American Express's preferred business strategy from a legitimate form of interbrand competition, especially competition on the basis of price, would amount to "nothing less than a frontal assault on the basic policy of the Sherman Act." Nat'l Soc. of Prof'l Eng'rs, 435 U.S. at 695. Indeed, it is telling that American Express cites no legal authority—and the court similarly finds none—to support the remarkable proposition that a restraint that effectively blocks interbrand competition on price across an entire market may be justified under Section 1 because the defendant firm would be less able to compete effectively in its absence.⁵² See NCAA v. Bd. of Regents of Univ. of Okla., 468 U.S. 85, 116-17 (1984) (rejecting pro-competitive justification in the horizontal restraint context premised on an "assumption that the product itself is insufficiently attractive to consumers" and thus needs to be insulated from "the full spectrum of competition" as "inconsistent with the basic policy of the Sherman Act"); Nat'l Soc'y of Prof'l Eng'rs, 435 U.S. at 696 ("In sum, the Rule of Reason does not support a defense based on the assumption that competition itself is unreasonable.").

Here, the point-of-sale "discrimination" from which American Express has insulated both itself and, effectively, its competitors, represents a valid expression of interbrand competition in the network services market. The court does not suggest that American Express does not have a

⁵² In its post-trial briefing, American Express cites only two cases for the proposition that "it is widely recognized that vertical restraints can increase interbrand competition by facilitating product differentiation and competition on quality." (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 24.) Neither case is directly applicable to the court's analysis of the NDPs. In Leegin, for example, the Supreme Court found the defendant's vertical agreements setting a floor below which its retailers could not price the goods in question were justified because "[m]inimum resale price maintenance can stimulate interbrand competition—the competition among manufacturers selling different brands of the same type of product—by reducing intrabrand competition—the competition among retailers selling the same brand." 551 U.S. at 890. Similarly, in New York v. Anheuser-Busch, Inc., a district court held that non-price agreements restricting intrabrand competition among defendant's wholesalers to be justified because the vertical restraints promoted interbrand competition by ensuring the quality, consistency, and vigorous promotion of its product. 811 F. Supp. 848, 874-78 (E.D.N.Y. 1993). Defendants' argument concerning its NDPs is quite different from the justifications accepted by the courts in Leegin and Anheuser-Busch. Rather than restricting intrabrand competition in the name of fostering greater interbrand competition, as was the case in the two decisions cited by American Express, the NDPs impede one form of interbrand competition (competition on price) in the purported name of another (increasing the number of rival firms with "welcome acceptance"). Therefore, the decisions cited by Defendants have no direct bearing on the issue before the court in this case. And as described below, American Express may not decide on behalf of an entire market which avenues of interbrand competition are open and which are closed.

legitimate business interest in ensuring its cardholders have a positive experience when using their Amex cards. It undoubtedly does. (See, e.g., Tr. at 928:16-24 (Hochschild/Discover), 4943:9-4944:21, 4959:15-4961:17 (Hayes/Amex) (discussing impact of user experience on the Amex brand, perceptions of coverage, and customer satisfaction); DX3974 at ‘279, ‘288; see also Tr. at 6356:23-6357:24 (Bernheim).) But the concept of “welcome acceptance” developed at trial describes marketplace conditions that have resulted in the absence of inter-network price competition at the point of sale. This point is made plain by the fact that Amex’s restraints preclude merchants from disclosing the relative costs of acceptance or otherwise encouraging their customers to use a particular card brand, even when American Express is not mentioned.⁵³ See supra Parts I.C, V.A (discussing scope of Amex’s NDPs and their ability to suppress price competition across the network services market).

In asserting this defense, American Express would also require the court to balance the restraints’ pro-competitive effect in a separate, though intertwined, antitrust market against their anticompetitive effect on the merchant side of the GPCC platform, a proposition for which Defendants cite no legal authority. By effectively suppressing competition on merchant pricing, Defendants’ anti-steering rules shift the bulk of interbrand competition in the credit and charge card industry to the cardholder side of the platform. As noted earlier, it is in the card issuance market that American Express and its rivals fiercely compete to acquire new cardholders and

⁵³ Testimony by a number of American Express witnesses further illustrates that merchant steering and a positive payment experience are not necessarily mutually exclusive. (See Tr. at 4575:7-10, 4576:12-18 (Chenault/Amex) (suggesting that if MasterCard offered a discount, free shipping, or another “benefit” to a customer at Whole Foods for using her MasterCard, it would not interfere with “welcome acceptance” so long as it occurred pursuant to a marketing agreement), 4550:6-4551:23 (Chenault/Amex) (noting that when a merchant offers a discount for using a co-brand card it “does not interfere with welcome acceptance”), 4557:22-4563:6, 4564:2-4565:16 (Chenault/Amex) (testifying that steering does not run afoul of “welcome acceptance” if done pursuant to a “sponsorship” relationship); see also id. at 790:7-24 (Quagliata/Amex); DX7525 at ‘382 (Amex’s consumer research concerning the “We Prefer Visa” campaign concluded that “being exposed to a payment preference message does not make CMs [cardmembers] and Non-CMs feel unwelcome,” and results in negative opinions of the merchant rather than the network).)

capture share of wallet by, among other things, securing lucrative co-brand deals, signing corporate card clients, and offering cardholders ever more robust suites of rewards and other ancillary benefits intended to induce them to spend on a particular card. Thus, in essence, while American Express professes that its NDPs enhance overall competition in the credit and charge card industry, that pro-competitive end is accomplished by inhibiting competition in the network services market for merchants—thereby ensuring that Amex’s spend-centric model continues to be fueled by high merchant discount fees—in favor of greater competition in the interrelated but distinct issuing market. As a general matter, however, a restraint that causes anticompetitive harm in one market may not be justified by greater competition in a different market.⁵⁴ Whether this rule precludes jointly weighing the relative gains and losses to interbrand competition in two separate, yet interrelated, markets that together comprise a single two-sided platform has yet to be explicitly considered by the Second Circuit. However, even if such cross-market balancing is appropriate under the rule of reason in a two-sided context,⁵⁵ here Defendants have failed to establish that the NDPs are reasonably necessary to robust competition on the cardholder side of the GPCC platform, or that any such gains offset the harm done in the network services market.

⁵⁴ See United States v. Topco Assocs., Inc., 405 U.S. 596, 610 (1972) (explaining that “the freedom to compete . . . cannot be foreclosed with respect to one sector of the economy because certain private citizens or groups believe that such foreclosure might promote greater competition in a more important sector of the economy”); United States v. Brown Univ., 5 F.3d 658, 675 (3d Cir. 1993) (dismissing argument that a restraint led to increased competition in other forms of competition as a “mere consequence of limiting price competition”). But see Sullivan v. Nat’l Football League, 34 F.3d 1091, 1112 (1st Cir. 1994) (suggesting in dicta that courts are capable of balancing harms inflicted to intrabrand competition in one market with gains to interbrand competition in another, distinct market). A similar concept has been rejected in the merger context as well. See United States v. Phila. Nat’l Bank, 374 U.S. 321, 370 (1963) (rejecting the possibility that under the Clayton Act “anticompetitive effects in one market could be justified by procompetitive consequences in another”).

⁵⁵ American Express has previously rejected the propriety of such balancing, arguing before the Second Circuit in Visa II that “no amount of issuer competition can eliminate the effects of increased prices, or reduced output, choice, or innovation at the network level. . . . Decreased competition in the sale of an input or intermediate good, such as network services, is harmful to consumers no matter how competitive the downstream market may be.” Brief of American Express Co. as Amicus Curiae in Support of Affirmance at 6-7, Visa II, 344 F.3d 229 (2d Cir. 2003), 2002 WL 32828497, at *6-7.

Furthermore, the law does not permit American Express to decide on behalf of the entire market which legitimate forms of interbrand competition should be available and which should not. See Nat'l Soc'y of Prof'l Eng'rs, 435 U.S. at 695 (asserting that a defendant firm cannot “impose[its] views of the costs and benefits of competition on the entire marketplace”); see also Trial Lawyers, 493 U.S. at 423-24. In force and effect, the NDPs represent a decision made by Defendants on behalf of all participants in the network services market that networks will not compete for additional share of GPCC spending by lowering their merchant pricing; rather, by suppressing competition on the merchant side of the GPCC platform, Amex has effectively compelled its rival networks and their issuing partners to focus their competitive efforts on cardholders. (See, e.g., Tr. at 6482:19-6483:24 (Bernheim) (suggesting the NDPs do not impede Discover's ability to compete for share because, rather than lower its discount rates, Discover could simply provide more robust rewards to its cardholders—in other words, it could be more like American Express).) This effect is evident in Visa's and MasterCard's decisions to introduce premium interchange categories in order to equip issuing banks with the resources necessary to more directly compete with the rewards and other benefits provided by American Express by virtue of its premium discount rate. Yet not all networks necessarily prefer to compete primarily on the cardholder side of the platform. Without the NDPs in place, for example, “Discover would aggressively pursue a strategy of lowering [its] prices and providing incentives to merchants that would steer incremental volume to Discover.” (See Tr. at 872:3-10 (Hochschild/Discover).) Defendants' restraints therefore deny other firms the ability to differentiate themselves on the basis of their merchant pricing. Indeed, Defendants' argument that net competition in the credit card industry will decline if its NDPs are eliminated fails to

consider the likely increase in interbrand competition on the merchant side of the GPCC platform that would result from unlocking price competition in the network services market.

Even if Defendants' proffered justification were legally cognizable, the court finds that their dire prediction of how business will be impacted by removal of the NDPs—namely, that American Express will cease to exist or be relegated to a niche competitor in the GPCC market—is not supported by the evidentiary record. It is not uncommon for antitrust defendants to assert that their businesses will suffer irreparable injury if the challenged restraints are deemed unlawful, and such predictions frequently prove inaccurate. (See Tr. at 5257:5-5260:14 (Gilbert) (acknowledging that a Visa executive testified in the course of the Visa litigation that removal of the exclusionary rules would be a “fatal blow” and that an adverse finding could result in the “destruction” of the Visa venture in the United States), 6599:10-6601:11 (Bernheim) (noting that a MasterCard witness similarly testified that a Government victory “could be a shattering blow to MasterCard”); see also PX2248 at 25-27 (similar testimony in United States v. Microsoft).)

Here, Defendants have presented no expert testimony, financial analysis, or other direct evidence establishing that without its NDPs it will, in fact, be unable to adapt its business to a more competitive market and will instead cease to be an effective competitor in the GPCC industry. Furthermore, the testimony adduced from various American Express executives and Defendants' experts, discussing the viability of Amex's current business model in a market in which merchant steering is permitted, was notably inconsistent. Mr. Chenault, for example, took the extreme position that “if the NDPs are eliminated [Amex] will not survive as a company,” and that “if the NDPs go away, [Amex] will go away.” (Tr. at 4633:5-4634:7 (Chenault/Amex).) But other witnesses, including Mr. Gilligan and Dr. Bernheim, took a more measured stance, noting that removal of the NDPs would “have a very negative effect on [Amex's] ability to

compete” (id. at 5833:7-17 (Gilligan/Amex)), and would require American Express to adapt its current business model to compete in both the issuing and network services markets (see id. at 6486:10-6487:16 (Bernheim)).

Defendants are not, as they might have the court believe, powerless in a world in which merchants and customers are able to jointly determine which payment product is used at the point of sale. American Express is the single largest issuer of credit and charge cards in the United States by purchase volume (see PX1560 at 8), maintains a worldwide acceptance network with millions of accepting merchants, possesses one of the most valuable brands in the world (DX6763 at ‘842; PX2143 (Amex has the most valuable brand of any financial services company, including its issuer and network competitors)), is a highly profitable enterprise that earned over \$5 billion in post-tax profit in 2013 (PX1412 at ‘135 tbl.1), and is operated by a tremendously qualified and resourceful set of employees and executives, many of whom testified at trial. (See Tr. at 4005:12-4008:12 (Katz).) Additionally, American Express has a proven track record of transforming itself and adapting its business model to suit changing competitive landscapes and market conditions.⁵⁶ (See id. at 3132:1-3133:20 (Pojero/Amex), 4630:4-4632:18 (Chenault/Amex); see also id. at 5747:4-20 (Gilligan/Amex); PX1438 at ‘22-24 (touting to investors the company’s “flexible business model” and its ability to adapt to changing regulatory conditions); PX0131 at 7 (same); PX1473 at 11 (same); PX1442 at 18 (same).) Thus, the court

⁵⁶ Although the court declines to rely on examples of how American Express has adapted its business in those foreign countries where merchant steering is permitted as evidence of how the company might react in the United States, such evidence does illustrate Amex’s adaptability as an institution. In Canada, for example, merchants since 2010 have had the ability to differentially discount by credit card brand and American Express continues to operate a profitable business in that country, maintaining its commitments to superior customer service and cardholder rewards. (See Tr. at 2694:24-2695:10 (Fundu/Amex), 5737:10-5738:6 (Gilligan/Amex).) Similarly, in Australia, after the RBA allowed merchants to impose differential surcharges by card brand, American Express was able to adapt to the new competitive landscape and today runs a highly profitable business in that country. (See PX1442 at 18 (Chenault telling investors “we’ve experienced surcharging in Australia. And while we had a momentary adjustment period obviously, to that, I think we were able to surmount the issues and we’re running a very profitable business in Australia”); Tr. at 5821:6-5823:15 (Gilligan/Amex) (noting Amex’s business in Australia “started growing at a very healthy rate” after surcharging began and “we gained market share in Australia”).)

finds that American Express possesses the flexibility and expertise necessary to adapt its business model to suit a market in which it is required to compete on both the cardholder and merchant sides of the GPCC platform. (See Tr. at 4005:12-4008:12 (Katz) (testifying that Amex will likely adapt its model “in order to prevent the downward spiral from happening” and that “there is no basis for concluding that [the NDPs] are essential to protecting [Amex’s] differentiat[ed] model”).)

American Express itself has identified a range of potential, permissible steps that the company could take in order to protect its ability to deliver a differentiated product if steering is permitted. In 2010, in response to the possibility that the Durbin Amendment might include a provision permitting merchants to engage in differential discounting among credit card brands, Amex convened a “Durbin Task Force” to analyze the competitive options available to the network. Recognizing that the network “would look to protect the business . . . [by] looking to incent the right behavior” among merchants, the Task Force identified a number of potential competitive responses the network might take to mitigate the likelihood that its merchants would be willing to engage in steering, including: engaging with merchants to reinforce Amex’s value proposition and better explain the benefits of accepting American Express; targeting high-visibility “Anchor” merchants with its own steering programs to preserve Amex’s relevance in key industries; shifting share away from non-friendly merchants; and reducing the network’s discount rate in industries where merchants might be particularly inclined to steer. (Tr. at 2742:17-2743:18, 2752:4-9 (Funda/Amex); PX1176 at ‘383-84; PX0090 at ‘473; PX0091 at ‘906-07.) Relatedly, American Express may also combat merchant steering by improving its value proposition to cardholders through, for example, increasing rewards and/or better communicating how the benefits of using an Amex card are more valuable than the enticements

offered by merchants at the point of sale, so as to increase cardholder insistence and thus render its cardholder base more resistant to merchants' efforts to persuade customers to use another form of payment. (PX1176 at '383, 385; PX0090 at '473; PX0091 at '906-07; see also Tr. at 2747:3-2748:7 (Funda/Amex).) These same competitive options are available to American Express in the wake of this litigation. (See Tr. at 2746:16-2747:2, 2748:8-17, 2753:17-23, 2754:14-20 (Funda/Amex).)

The court recognizes, of course, that these potential responses to merchant steering are not without their attendant costs. (Tr. at 2811:5-23 (Funda/Amex), 6425:8-24 (Bernheim) (noting the Durbin Task Force looked at the range of possible responses, without necessarily considering cost).) Yet the outcome of the court's analysis in this case cannot be dictated by a concern that Amex may be a less profitable enterprise if it is required to compete on the basis of price with its fellow networks.⁵⁷ Moreover, in the event American Express is forced to decrease its merchant discount rates in order to dissuade merchants from steering, the court finds it unlikely that the downward spiral described by Defendants' counsel will occur.⁵⁸ (See Tr. at

⁵⁷ See Cargill, Inc. v. Monfort of Colo., Inc., 479 U.S. 104, 117 (1986) (describing the "perverse result" that would accompany a "hold[ing] that the antitrust laws protect competitors from the loss of profits due to . . . price competition"); Stamatakis Indus., 965 F.2d at 471 ("[A] producer's loss is no concern of the antitrust laws, which protect consumers from suppliers rather than suppliers from each other."); Drug Mart Pharmacy Corp. v. Am. Home Prods. Corp., 472 F. Supp. 2d 385, 402 (E.D.N.Y. 2007) ("[T]he antitrust laws are not intended to protect profit margins but consumer welfare." (internal quotation marks omitted)).

⁵⁸ At the extreme, Defendants caution that the NDPs provide important protections against the network services market "tipping" to the dominant networks, Visa and MasterCard, and that their removal could result in the market being dominated by an effective duopoly. (See Tr. at 5051:11-22 (Gilbert).) Again, this argument overstates the value of anti-steering rules in enhancing interbrand competition. Tipping describes "the tendency of one system to pull away from its rivals in popularity once it has gained an initial edge," which is particularly relevant in markets subject to network effects, where the positive feedback loops are self-reinforcing. (DX0229 at '105-06; Tr. at 4201:17-4202:8 (Katz).) Here, however, the likelihood of the network services market tipping to Visa and MasterCard is limited both by Amex's provision of a differentiated product and by the fact that merchants and cardholders typically are multi-homing—i.e., merchants accept multiple card brands, which "greatly diminishes the [likelihood of] tipping and makes it feasible – or more likely that multiple networks will survive." (Tr. at 4250:25-4251:18 (Katz); see also id. at 4208:1-17 (Katz), 5052:2-17 (Gilbert).) Defendants present no empirical evidence to suggest that this market is particularly likely to tip if steering is permitted, and the quantitative evidence that was presented to the court suggests that the market is less susceptible to this dynamic than Amex contends. For example, the evidence shows that although Amex's share fell 20% between 1990 and 1995, the market did not tip to Visa and MasterCard. (Id. at 5154:11-17.)

4006:1-4008:12 (Katz) (concluding that a downward spiral is unlikely to result from removal of the NDPs, based on market evidence and Defendants’ capacity to take steps to prevent such an outcome).) Defendants’ depiction of the “vicious cycle” they contend would result from removal of the NDPs not only disregards the various responses the firm has available to mitigate the degree and efficacy of merchant steering, but also ignores the countervailing incentives and market forces that suggest that Amex’s current model will be more resilient than Defendants imply. (Tr. at 4011:22-4014:2 (Katz).) If, as Defendants have strenuously insisted, American Express truly offers merchants a differentiated and premium set of services as compared to its competitors—i.e., access to higher-spending cardholders, closed-loop analytics, and the like—merchants will take that additional value into account when deciding whether and to what extent to steer customers to other forms of payment. (*Id.*) Merchants also can be expected to consider the reaction of insistent Amex cardholders when deciding whether and how much to steer. Put plainly, assuming American Express actually offers premium value to its merchants, the market will tolerate Amex charging a premium price for its network services, even in the absence of the NDPs—albeit, in all likelihood, at a smaller premium than it charges today. In such an environment, removal of the NDPs will benefit interbrand competition, as the net price established across the two-sided GPCC platform will be jointly determined by the two sets of consumers served by American Express, and not artificially inflated by contractual restraints that isolate supply from demand.⁵⁹

The court nonetheless shares American Express’s concerns about disrupting the competitive landscape in such a concentrated, complex market. (*See, e.g.*, Tr. at 5126:19-5127:5 (Gilbert).) As the court noted at the beginning of this Decision, it would have strongly preferred

⁵⁹ In striking this equilibrium, it is possible that American Express will be forced to raise its fees to cardholders in order to offset declining discount revenue—in effect, requiring the recipients of its premium rewards to bear a greater share of their cost.

the parties to have resolved this dispute among themselves. Absent such an agreement, the court is compelled to enforce Section 1 based on the prevailing law in this circuit and the facts developed at trial. American Express plainly faces a number of structural challenges in this market: It is a discretionary card for the vast majority of cardholders, it has significantly fewer cardholders than the other networks, and it is accepted at roughly three million fewer merchant locations. But American Express is not permitted to resort to unreasonable vertical restraints in order to ensure what it subjectively views to be a “level playing field.” (See, e.g., Tr. at 2749:4-9 (Funda/Amex).)

Notwithstanding the outcome of this litigation, American Express’s card products and cardholders will remain protected from unfair denigration and discrimination at the point of sale. Plaintiffs do not challenge, and the court does not find unlawful, those aspects of the network’s Merchant Regulations and acceptance agreements that prohibit merchants from “mischaracteriz[ing]” Amex’s products, “engag[ing] in activities that harm [Amex’s] business or the American Express brand (or both),” or requiring customers to pay a fee when using their American Express card that is not also charged when using another card brand. (See Am. Compl. ¶ 28; see also Tr. at 5828:8-5829:14 (Gilligan/Amex); PX2754 (demonstrative exhibit highlighting NDP language not challenged in this case).) Thus, even after a remedial order is issued pursuant to this Decision, under the surviving provisions of Amex’s merchant rules, a merchant likely will still be prohibited from, among other things, posting a sign purporting to show the networks’ relative costs that is inaccurate or that mischaracterizes the relative cost of American Express, refusing to accept an Amex card when presented at the point of sale, or disparaging American Express to the merchants’ customers. Second, to the extent American Express has expressed a concern that Visa and/or MasterCard may seek to undermine Amex’s

success cycle at the point of sale in order to create a “contagion effect” that spreads through Amex’s business at non-steering merchants (see Tr. at 6418:3-6420:4 (Bernheim); see also DX5378 at ‘405 (discussing Visa strategy in Australia where prohibitions on steering are more relaxed)), Defendants retain the right and resources to seek enforcement of the federal and state antitrust laws if they feel their competitors have strayed beyond the confines of legitimate competition (Tr. at 4009:3-4010:15 (Katz)). See, e.g., Apple, 952 F. Supp. 2d at 708 (“Another company’s alleged violation of antitrust laws is not an excuse for engaging in your own violations of law.”).

B. Free-Riding

American Express also asserts that its NDPs enable competition by reducing merchants’ ability to “free-ride” on the network’s various investments in its merchant and cardholder value propositions. Present even in purely competitive markets, the so-called “free-rider effect” occurs when a competitor’s incentive to make a particular pro-competitive investment is undercut by the diversion of its expected return to another firm without compensation.⁶⁰ (See Tr. at 3994:11-3995:15 (Katz), 6426:14-6427:8 (Bernheim).) See also Leegin, 551 U.S. at 913-14; Major

⁶⁰ As explained by Judge Easterbrook, the classic example of free-riding occurs in the context of retail distribution:

Manufacturer produces a product or improvement that requires explanation or demonstration—perhaps a television set with an improved degaussing coil. Retailer #1 demonstrates the effects to consumers in a showroom filled with TV sets, some with and some without the feature. Such a demonstration is costly in merchandise, in staff time, in floor space. Neither Manufacturer nor Retailer #1 can charge the consumer for this information. Its value is too uncertain to expect the consumer to pay for access to the sales floor, and a retailer is not apt to gain customers by threatening to charge them if they leave without buying. So a consumer may leave the store with valuable information; Retailer #1 recovers the cost of supplying this information in the purchase price of the product, not with a separate charge. Yet a consumer armed with the information may order the product from Retailer #2, which offers no information. Retailer #2 can make a profit at a lower price than does Retailer #1, for Retailer #2 has lower costs. To compete, Retailer #1 must lower its own price, and that means lowering its costs too—cutting cost by cutting services that consumers value.

Chi. Prof'l Sports Ltd. P'ship v. Nat'l Basketball Ass'n, 961 F.2d 667, 675 (7th Cir. 1992) (citing Lester G. Telser, Why Should Manufacturers Want Fair Trade?, 3 J.L. & Econ. 86 (1960)). (See also Tr. at 6437:23-6438:6 (Bernheim) (describing the same free-rider problem by referencing the “expression that Best Buy is Amazon’s showroom”).)

League, 542 F.3d at 305 (referring to the “‘free-rider’ problem” as “one entity’s cashing in on the efforts of another”); Chi. Prof’l Sports Ltd. P’ship v. Nat’l Basketball Ass’n, 961 F.2d 667, 675 (7th Cir. 1992) (“Free-riding is the diversion of value from a business rival’s efforts without payment.”). The Supreme Court has recognized that prevention of free-riding is a legitimate, pro-competitive justification for vertical restraints on trade. See Leegin, 551 U.S. at 590-91 (finding resale price maintenance to be justified in part because in its absence, services “that enhance interbrand competition might be underprovided because discounting retailers can free-ride” on firms “who furnish services and then capture some of the increased demand those services generate”); GTE Sylvania, 433 U.S. at 55 (noting vertical restraints may promote interbrand competition by remedying “market imperfections such as the so-called ‘free rider’ effect”). Here, however, to the extent Defendants have identified potential avenues of free-riding foreclosed by its NDPs, the court finds that the competitive benefits of preventing these forms of merchant behavior do not offset the significantly more pervasive harms done to interbrand competition by the same restraints.

American Express first proposes that the NDPs are justified in order to prevent merchants from free-riding on the analytics-based services the network provides directly to its merchants. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 26.) In the absence of these restraints, Defendants suggest, for example, that merchants could draw Amex cardholders to their establishments through a targeted marketing campaign facilitated by Amex’s investments in its closed-loop model—efforts which, according to the network, are both effective and have persistent benefits for participating merchants—only to steer those cardholders to a less expensive card network at the register. (Tr. at 6429:13-6430:8, 6431:11-6433:17, 6440:1-9, 6442:13-6443:1 (Bernheim).) Were steering permitted, American Express asserts its ability to “deliver[] useful advertising products to

merchants” would be hampered, reducing beneficial competition among the networks and merchants. (See id. at 6443:20-6444:20 (Bernheim).) Similarly, American Express is concerned about merchants’ ability to exploit its other market intelligence products, as merchants conceivably could use the insights contained therein to more effectively attract Amex cardholders and then steer them to another card product. This free-riding justification is flawed in a number of respects.

For example, American Express’s efforts to justify its anti-steering rules as a necessary measure to protect its pro-competitive investments in delivering data-analytics services is significantly undercut by the fact that the network can—and, indeed, often does—price and sell these ancillary benefits separately from its core network services. Where, as here, “payment is possible, free-riding is not a problem because the ‘ride’ is not free.” Chi. Prof’l Sports, 961 F.2d at 675 (“What gives this the name free-riding is the lack of charge. Retailer #1 does not charge the customer for a valuable service; Retailer #2 does not pay Retailer #1 for delivering this service.” (emphasis in original)); United States v. Microsoft Corp., No. 98-CV-1232 (TPJ), 1998 WL 614485, at *21 (D.D.C. Sept. 14, 1998); see also 13 Areeda & Hovenkamp ¶ 2223b3. American Express acknowledges that it sells its merchant analytics to some merchants for a fixed fee, separate and apart from what the merchant pays for Amex’s network services, and often pursuant to a separate contractual agreement that ensures Amex is paid for the benefit conferred. (See Tr. at 1072:5-15 (Quagliata/Amex) (“At times . . . we charge for [data-analytics products] and at times we don’t, depending upon the nature of the analysis.”); see also id. at 396:25-397:16 (Robinson/Ikea) (Ikea received a “one-time freebie” of merchant analytics, but understood it would have to pay for any additional market analyses it wanted in the future), 2438:13-2439:12 (Priebe/Southwest); DX5391; DX4852; Tr. at 4889:18-20 (Glenn/Amex).)

In other words, unlike the service-providing retailer in the paradigmatic free-rider scenario, American Express is not reliant on the sale of its core network services to recover the cost of providing these additional benefits; to recoup its investment and obviate the “free” benefit captured by the merchant, American Express can simply charge all merchants a fee for its analytics, rather than charging only some. (See Tr. at 3995:19-3997:3 (Katz) (“[T]o the extent there’s freeriding [in the provision of direct benefits to merchants] it’s America[n] Express’s choice whether to allow it. . . . [I]t’s their decision whether or not to charge for [merchant analytics].”).) Amex’s marketing services are similarly divisible from its provision of network services; consequently, a less restrictive fee-for-service alternative to the NDPs is available for use by American Express should it choose to do so.⁶¹ (Id. at 3996:14-3997:3 (Katz); see also id. at 5120:13-5121:9 (Gilbert) (noting “[Amex] could still . . . ask for a direct payment instead of using the merchant discount rate,” while noting such a structure may reduce the value of the program).) Thus, American Express’s ability to separately price and sell the data-analytics services it claims are susceptible to free-riding, as well as its concomitant ability to exclude a merchant from receiving these benefits if Amex believes it is free-riding or otherwise paying an insufficient amount for these services,⁶² leads the court to conclude that the network possesses

⁶¹ Drs. Bernheim and Gilbert dispute the feasibility of a fee-for-service model for American Express’s marketing services. (Tr. at 5120:13-5122:11 (Gilbert), 6447:17-6451:8 (Bernheim).) Under the current model, they argue, American Express recovers the cost of supporting its merchants’ marketing efforts through the merchant discount rate. They note this compensation structure effectively aligns the interests of both the network and merchant over the course of the promotion—both parties aim to increase spend—and that a fixed-fee structure would be less effective in doing so. (Id. at 6448:1-6449:11 (Bernheim).) Yet Plaintiffs do not suggest that the only feasible pricing structure for Amex’s marketing services is a fixed fee, and Defendants have presented insufficient justification as to why joint marketing agreements could not have incentive-based compensation structures that are equally effective at eliminating moral hazard and reducing potential free-riding.

⁶² American Express does not dispute that it retains the capacity to end free-riding by a specific merchant should it so choose by, for example, ending the specific marketing campaign or even terminating that merchant’s acceptance agreement. For example, when Defendants learned Marquis Jet was steering customers away from its network during a joint marketing promotion with American Express—i.e., precisely the kind of free-riding envisioned by Defendants—the network terminated its promotion contract with Marquis Jet. (See id. at 6440:14-6441:11 (Bernheim); DX2016 at ‘814.) Defendants have provided no reason to why a similar approach, including active monitoring of the merchant’s charge volume during and after the promotion, would be neither effective nor feasible

equally effective and significantly less restrictive means of preventing this form of free-riding.⁶³ Therefore, as compared to the alternatives, the marginal pro-competitive benefit of the NDPs in this regard is minimal.

American Express next proposes that the NDPs are necessary to prevent merchants from indirectly free-riding on its cardholder investments, including rewards. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 26; Tr. at 6428:15-6429:22 (Bernheim).) Plainly, however, investments tied to card use (such as Membership Rewards points, purchase protection, and the like) are not subject to free-riding, since the network does not incur any cost if the cardholder is successfully steered away from using his or her American Express card. (See Tr. at 3997:4-3998:5 (Katz), 5120:8-12 (Gilbert), 6428:4-6429:12 (Bernheim).) American Express instead suggests that certain “fixed expenses” undertaken by the network to build a positive and trusting relationship with its cardholders are undermined when merchants direct its cardholders to less expensive competitors. (Id. at 6912:1-3 (Closing Argument); see also id. at 6429:13-22 (Bernheim).) Though Defendants make no effort to identify the fixed expenses to which its experts referred or to explain how they are subject to free-riding, the court surmises the free-rider problem potentially at issue. Suppose, for example, an American Express cardholder who self-selects a particular merchant specifically because that merchant accepts American Express cards, but, at the point of sale, the cardholder is induced by the merchant to use another form of payment in order to receive a 5% discount off of the retail price. The merchant would then appear to have benefitted from American Express’s

among the limited number of merchants with whom American Express conducts such programs. (See Tr. at 3996:14-3997:3 (Katz).)

⁶³ American Express also overstates the potential harm of free-riding on these types of investments. The network’s ability to separately price and sell its merchant analytics, for example, ensures an independent incentive for the network to continue investing in its ability to provide these analytics-based services. Put simply, the network has a means to ensure a return on its investment separate and apart from the discount revenue associated with those cardholders who are successfully steered to a different card product.

efforts to direct its cardholders to Amex-accepting merchants without having to incur the cost of actually accepting Amex on that purchase.

Avoidance of this type of potential free-riding does not suffice to overcome the market-wide harms effected by the NDPs, however. First, the court understands that the free-riding problem identified above is limited; if the customer in question is not directed to the merchant by virtue of its acceptance of American Express, but instead—in what the court finds is a more credible or likely scenario—walks into the merchant’s establishment intending to make a particular purchase regardless of the card options available, no free-riding occurs when that customer is steered to a non-Amex card. (Tr. at 6434:6-6435:12 (Bernheim).) More importantly, the anticompetitive effect associated with free-riding of this type is matched by a countervailing benefit for consumers on both sides of the platform. An economically rational consumer will not accept a merchant’s invitation to use another card product unless he believes that what the merchant is offering is of greater value than the rewards or other benefits he receives for using his Amex card. Thus, where a merchant is able to steer the self-selecting customer away from American Express, it appears that both the merchant-consumer and cardholder-consumer derive a net benefit. Moreover, the court remains unconvinced that this type of steering will reduce the network’s incentive to invest in creating value for cardholders. To the contrary, as one Amex executive testified, the network may choose to increase its investments in rewards in order to make its cardholders more resistant to merchants’ efforts to steer them to other card brands. (Tr. at 2748:3-17, 2754:7-20 (Funda/Amex); see also PX0090 at ‘473 (outlining potential Amex responses to steering toward debit cards).)⁶⁴ As a result, while

⁶⁴ To the extent Amex argues that merchants could free-ride by benefitting from its cardholders’ tendency to spend more on average without having to incur the associated costs (see Tr. at 5119:9-17 (Gilbert)), the network has presented no evidence to suggest that customers steered to another card product would still spend as much as they would have if they used their Amex cards.

Defendants have identified a potentially viable avenue of free-riding, the court does not agree that the potential competitive harm posed by this type of merchant behavior outweighs the negative effect its NDPs have on competition in the relevant market.

Lastly, Defendants propose that the challenged restraints promote competition by ensuring merchants cannot free-ride on American Express's investments to enhance its brand value. (Defs. Post-Trial Br. at 26.) Specifically, Defendants argue that merchants derive a benefit from linking their brands with that of American Express—a phenomenon known as “brand association” or “credentialing”—when they represent to consumers that they accept the networks' credit and charge cards; Defendants maintain that when merchants steer away from American Express, they effectively free-ride on Amex's investments in strengthening its own brand. (Tr. at 6444:21-6445:10 (Bernheim).) The court finds this purported justification to be without merit. As Dr. Katz correctly noted, any alleged credentialing is “not the result of a specific investment” by Defendants, and is instead “an ancillary benefit [of] their business model,” such that any free-riding would not endanger the network's underlying incentive to promote its brand. (Tr. at 3998:21-4000:1 (Katz).) Additionally, Amex's own survey data concerning cardholder perceptions of Amex-accepting merchants indicate that the network's ability to confer a credentialing benefit trails that of its competitors, casting doubt on whether there is in fact any particular benefit associated with accepting Amex that is subject to free-riding. (See PX0815 at '294-95; Tr. at 4002:1-4004:12 (Katz).) Thus, the court cannot conclude the NDPs are justified to prevent free-riding on Amex's brand.

VII. CONCLUSION

For the foregoing reasons, the court concludes that Plaintiffs have proven by a preponderance of the evidence that the challenged restraints constitute an unlawful restraint on trade under Section 1 of the Sherman Act. Following briefing by the parties in accordance with the Scheduling Order issued contemporaneously with this Decision, the court will separately issue a Remedial Order and a Judgment after it determines the appropriate remedy.

SO ORDERED.

Dated: Brooklyn, New York
February 19, 2015

s/ Nicholas G. Garaufis
NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS
United States District Judge

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
EASTERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

-----X

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, et al.,

Plaintiffs,

-against-

AMERICAN EXPRESS COMPANY and
AMERICAN EXPRESS TRAVEL RELATED
SERVICES COMPANY, INC.,

Defendants.

-----X

NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS, United States District Judge.

**ORDER ENTERING
PERMANENT INJUNCTION
AS TO THE AMERICAN
EXPRESS DEFENDANTS**

10-CV-4496 (NGG) (RER)

I. DEFINITIONS

As used in this Order Entering Permanent Injunction as to the American Express Defendants:

A. “Acquiring Bank” means a Person authorized by a General Purpose Card Network to enter into agreements with Merchants to accept that Network’s General Purpose Cards as payment for goods or services.

B. “American Express” means American Express Company, a New York corporation with its principal place of business in New York, New York, and American Express Travel Related Services Company, Inc., a Delaware corporation with its principal place of business in New York, New York, their successors and assigns, and their controlled subsidiaries (whether partially or wholly owned), divisions, groups, affiliates, partnerships, and joint ventures, and their directors, officers, managers, agents, and employees.

C. “American Express General Purpose Card” means a General Purpose Card bearing the Brand of American Express.

- D. “Brand” means the brand or mark of a General Purpose Card Network.
- E. “Customer” means a Person that pays for goods or services.
- F. “Department of Justice” means the United States Department of Justice, Antitrust Division.
- G. “Effective Date” means the later of: (i) thirty (30) days following the date of entry of this Permanent Injunction; or (ii) thirty (30) days following the expiration of any stay of this Permanent Injunction entered by this court or any appellate court of competent jurisdiction.
- H. “General Purpose Card” means a credit or charge card issued pursuant to rules of a General Purpose Card Network that enables Customers to make purchases from unrelated Merchants without accessing or reserving funds, regardless of any other functions the card may have.
- I. “General Purpose Card Network” means any Person that directly or indirectly assembles a group of unrelated Merchants to accept and a group of unrelated Customers to make purchases with General Purpose Cards bearing the Person’s Brand, and includes General Purpose Card Networks such as Visa, MasterCard, American Express, and Discover.
- J. “Including” means including but not limited to.
- K. “Issuing Bank” means (i) a Person authorized by a General Purpose Card Network to enter into agreements with cardholders for the use of that Network’s General Purpose Cards for payment at a Merchant; or (ii) a General Purpose Card Network that enters into agreements with cardholders for the use of that Network’s General Purpose Cards for payment at a Merchant.
- L. “MasterCard” means MasterCard International Incorporated, a Delaware corporation with its principal place of business in Purchase, New York, its successors and

assigns, and its subsidiaries (whether partially or wholly owned), divisions, groups, affiliates, partnerships, and joint ventures, and their directors, officers, managers, agents, and employees.

M. “Merchant” means a Person that accepts American Express’s General Purpose Cards as payment for goods or services. For the avoidance of doubt, “Merchant” includes Persons, including Official Payments, that offer the service of facilitating General Purpose Card payments for other Persons (such as governmental entities and universities) and Persons, including PayPal and Square, that offer mobile wallet services.

N. “Other General Purpose Card” means a General Purpose Card that does not bear the Brand of American Express.

O. “Permanent Injunction” means this document: the Order Entering Permanent Injunction as to the American Express Defendants in United States, et al. v. American Express Co., et al., No. 10-CV-4496 (NGG) (RER) (E.D.N.Y.).

P. “Person” means any natural person, corporation, company, partnership, joint venture, firm, association, proprietorship, agency, board, authority, commission, office, or other business or legal entity, whether private or governmental.

Q. “Plaintiff States” means the States of Arizona, Connecticut, Idaho, Illinois, Iowa, Maryland, Michigan, Missouri, Montana, Nebraska, New Hampshire, Ohio, Rhode Island, Tennessee, Texas, Utah, and Vermont.

R. “Representative Plaintiff States” means, as of the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, the States of Missouri, Ohio, and Texas. The Plaintiff States may designate a different Plaintiff State as a substitute Representative Plaintiff State at any time by communicating the change in writing to American Express and the Department of Justice.

S. “Rule” means any rule, bylaw, policy, standard, guideline, or practice applicable to Merchants in the United States.

T. “Type” means a category of General Purpose Cards, including traditional cards, rewards cards, or premium cards (e.g., a “Visa Signature Card” or a “World MasterCard”).

U. “Visa” means Visa Inc., a Delaware corporation with its principal place of business in San Francisco, California, its successors and assigns, and its subsidiaries (whether partially or wholly owned), divisions, groups, affiliates, partnerships, and joint ventures, and their directors, officers, managers, agents, and employees, but shall not include Visa Europe Limited and its wholly owned affiliates.

V. The terms “and” and “or” have both conjunctive and disjunctive meanings.

II. APPLICABILITY

This Permanent Injunction applies to American Express and to all other Persons in active concert or participation with it who receive actual notice of this Permanent Injunction by personal service or otherwise.

III. PROHIBITED CONDUCT

A. The purpose of this Section III is to allow Merchants to attempt to influence the General Purpose Card that a Customer uses by providing choices and information in a competitive market. This includes allowing Merchants to attempt to influence the General Purpose Card that a Customer uses by referencing brand names that could refer to both Brands of General Purpose Cards and brands of debit cards. This Permanent Injunction should be interpreted to promote all such efforts with the exception of surcharging and disparaging conduct. Accordingly, upon the Effective Date, American Express shall not adopt, maintain, or

- SPA155

7. communicating to a Customer the reasonably estimated (including, for example, average) or actual costs incurred by the Merchant when a Customer uses a particular Brand or Type of General Purpose Card or the relative costs of using different Brands or Types of General Purpose Cards; or

8. engaging in any other practices substantially equivalent to the practices described in Sections III.A.1 through III.A.7 of this Permanent Injunction.

B. Subject to compliance with the antitrust laws, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010, and any other applicable state or federal law, nothing in this Permanent Injunction shall prohibit American Express from:

1. enforcing existing agreements or entering into agreements pursuant to which a Merchant selects American Express General Purpose Cards as the only General Purpose Cards the Merchant will accept as payment for goods and services;

2. enforcing existing agreements or entering into agreements pursuant to which a Merchant agrees that it will encourage Customers to use co-branded or affinity General Purpose Cards bearing both the American Express Brand and the co-brand or affinity partner's name, logo, or brand as payment for goods and services and will not encourage Customers to use Other General Purpose Cards;

3. entering into agreements pursuant to which a Merchant agrees (i) that it will encourage Customers, through specific, listed practices falling under the protections enumerated in Sections III.A.1 through III.A.8 of this Permanent Injunction, to use General Purpose Cards bearing American Express's Brand as payment for goods and services, and (ii) that it will not use the same specific, listed practices to encourage Customers to use General Purpose Cards bearing any other Person's Brand as payment for goods and services; provided

that (a) any such agreement is not part of the Merchant's card acceptance agreement, is individually negotiated with the Merchant, and is not a standard agreement or part of a standard agreement generally offered by American Express to multiple Merchants (for the purpose of this Section III.B.3, an agreement is not made "non-standard" by inclusion of minor variations in wording; only a significant and substantive difference makes an agreement "non-standard"), and (b) the Merchant's acceptance of American Express's General Purpose Cards as payment for goods and services is unrelated to and not conditioned upon the Merchant's entry into any such agreement;

4. adopting, maintaining, and enforcing Rules that prohibit Merchants from encouraging Customers to pay for goods or services using an American Express General Purpose Card issued by one particular Issuing Bank rather than American Express General Purpose Cards issued by any other Issuing Bank;

5. adopting, maintaining, and enforcing Rules that require a Merchant that engages in any of the practices enumerated in Sections III.A.1 through III.A.8 of this Permanent Injunction to also communicate to Customers that it accepts American Express General Purpose Cards by posting limited signage (including online or on mobile services) or communicating orally that the Merchant accepts American Express General Purpose Cards; provided, however, that American Express shall not require a Merchant that engages in any of the practices enumerated in Sections III.A.1 through III.A.8 of this Permanent Injunction to do more than reasonably indicate to Customers its acceptance of American Express General Purpose Cards, and in no event shall the Rules deter steering or undermine its efficacy; and

6. undertaking efforts to influence its Card Members to transact with Merchants that do not engage in any of the practices enumerated in Sections III.A.1 through

III.A.8 of this Permanent Injunction, or Merchants that enter into agreements with American Express pursuant to Section III.B.3 of this Permanent Injunction.

C. Subject to Section III.A of this Permanent Injunction, nothing in this Permanent Injunction shall prohibit American Express from:

1. adopting, maintaining, and enforcing Rules (including the Rules identified in Section IV.B of this Permanent Injunction) that prohibit Merchants from:

a. disparaging its Brand, including engaging in activities that harm American Express's business or Brand; or

b. mischaracterizing its Brand, including making untrue statements about American Express or about the Merchant's cost(s) for accepting American Express General Purpose Cards or Other General Purpose Cards, including the relative costs thereof; and

2. adopting, maintaining, and enforcing Rules (including the Rules identified in Section IV.B of this Permanent Injunction) that prohibit Merchants from imposing surcharges.

For the avoidance of doubt, American Express shall not prohibit, prevent, or restrain a Merchant from engaging in any of the protected practices enumerated in Section III.A of this Permanent Injunction on the grounds that American Express believes or asserts that one or more of such practices “disparages,” “mischaracterizes,” or “harms” its business or Brand.

D. American Express shall not adopt, maintain, or enforce any Rule, or enter into or enforce any agreement, that prohibits, prevents, restrains, deters, or inhibits an Acquiring Bank from supplying a Merchant, on a transaction-by-transaction or other basis, information regarding the costs or fees the Merchant would incur in accepting each General Purpose Card, including a

particular Type of General Purpose Card, presented by the Customer as payment for that Customer's transaction.

IV. REQUIRED CONDUCT

A. Upon the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, American Express shall delete, discontinue, and cease to enforce in the United States any Rule that it would be prohibited from adopting, maintaining, or enforcing pursuant to Section III.A of this Permanent Injunction.

B. Specifically, upon the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, American Express shall cease to enforce or alter the following provisions currently contained in its Rules:

1. American Express shall modify Section 3.2 of the "American Express Merchant Reference Guide – U.S." (PX-0001) by no longer enforcing at least the double-bracketed and italicized language, as indicated below:

3.2 treatment of the American Express brand

American Express has built a brand that is synonymous with trust, integrity, security, quality, and customer service. We work diligently to uphold our reputation and restrict Merchants from engaging in activities that would harm our business or brand.

Except as expressly permitted by Applicable Law, Merchants must not:

- *[[indicate or imply that they prefer, directly or indirectly, any Other Payment Products over our Card,]]*
- *[[try to dissuade Cardmembers from using the Card,]]*
- *[[criticize or]]* mischaracterize the Card or any of our services or programs,
- *[[try to persuade or prompt Cardmembers to use any Other Payment Products or any other method of payment (e.g., payment by check),]]*
- impose any *[[restrictions, conditions, disadvantages or]]* fees when the Card is accepted that are not imposed equally on all Other Payment Products, except for electronic funds transfer, cash, and checks,

- engage in activities that harm our business or the American Express Brand (or both) [*,or*
- *promote any Other Payment Products (except the Merchant's own private label card that they issue for use solely at their Establishments) more actively than the Merchant promotes our Card*]].

[[Merchants may offer discounts or in-kind incentives from their regular prices for payments in cash, ACH funds transfer, check, debit card or credit/charge card, provided that (to the extent required by Applicable Law): (i) they clearly and conspicuously disclose the terms of the discount or in-kind incentive to their customers, (ii) the discount or in-kind incentive is offered to all of their prospective customers, and (iii) the discount or in-kind incentive does not differentiate on the basis of the issuer or, except as expressly permitted by applicable state statute, payment card network (e.g., Visa, MasterCard, Discover, JCB, American Express). The offering of discounts or in-kind incentives in compliance with the terms of this paragraph will not constitute a violation of the provisions set forth above in this section 3.2.]]

*[[Whenever payment methods are communicated to customers, or]] when customers ask what payments are accepted, Merchants must indicate their acceptance of the Card [*and display our Marks according to our guidelines and as prominently and in the same manner as any Other Payment Products*]].*

The Merchant must not use our Marks in any way that injures or diminishes the goodwill associated with the Mark, nor (without our prior written consent) indicate that we endorse the Merchant's goods or services. The Merchant shall only use our Marks as permitted by the Agreement and shall cease using our Marks upon termination of the Agreement.

2. American Express shall modify Section 3.2 of the "American Express Merchant Regulations – U.S." (PX-0002) by no longer enforcing at least the double-bracketed and italicized language, as indicated below:

3.2 treatment of the American Express Brand

For the past 150 years, American Express has built a brand that is synonymous with trust, integrity, security, quality, and customer service. We work diligently to uphold our reputation, and restrict Merchants from engaging in activities that would harm our business or brand.

Except as expressly permitted by Applicable Law, you must not:

- *[[indicate or imply that you prefer, directly or indirectly, any Other Payment Products over our Card,]]*
- *[[try to dissuade Cardmembers from using the Card,]]*
- *[[criticize or]]* mischaracterize the Card or any of our services or programs,
- *[[try to persuade or prompt Cardmembers to use any Other Payment Products or any other method of payment (e.g., payment by check),]]*
- impose any *[[restrictions, conditions, disadvantages or]]* fees when the Card is accepted that are not imposed equally on all Other Payment Products, except for electronic funds transfer, or cash and check,
- engage in activities that harm our business or the American Express Brand (or both) *[[, or*
- *promote any Other Payment Products (except your own private label card that you issue for use solely at your Establishments) more actively than you promote our Card]].*

[[You may offer discounts or in-kind incentives from your regular prices for payments in cash, ACH funds transfer, check, debit card or credit/charge card, provided that (to the extent required by Applicable Law): (i) you clearly and conspicuously disclose the terms of the discount or in-kind incentive to your customers, (ii) the discount or in-kind incentive is offered to all of your prospective customers, and (iii) the discount or in-kind incentive does not differentiate on the basis of the issuer or, except as expressly permitted by applicable state statute, payment card network (e.g., Visa, MasterCard, Discover, JCB, American Express). The offering of discounts or in-kind incentives in compliance with the terms of this paragraph will not constitute a violation of the provisions set forth above in this section 3.2, “treatment of the American Express Brand.”]]

3. American Express shall modify the first paragraph of Section 3.2.1 of the “American Express Merchant Regulations – U.S.” (PX-0002) by no longer enforcing at least the double-bracketed and italicized language, as indicated below:

3.2.1 treatment of the American Express marks

[[Whenever payment methods are communicated to customers, or]] when customers ask what payments are accepted, you must indicate your acceptance of

the Card *[[and display our Marks (including any Card application forms we may provide you) as prominently and in the same manner as any Other Payment Products]]*.

4. In order to implement its rights under Section III.B.5 of this Permanent Injunction, American Express may, if it chooses, also include the following supplemental language in its contracts with Merchants:

If Merchants choose to attempt to influence a customer's choice of credit/charge card, such Merchants must also post limited signage at the point of sale (including online or on mobile services) or store entry or communicate orally that the Merchants accept the Card.

Any alternative or additional language must be disclosed to the Department of Justice in advance of implementation in accordance with Section IV.H of this Permanent Injunction, and must be consistent with American Express's limited authority under Section III.B.5 of this Permanent Injunction.

5. Nothing in this Section IV shall be construed to express any view on the legality of any Rule that American Express is not required to delete; in particular, no view is expressed concerning the legality of any past, present, or future Rule concerning surcharges.

C. American Express shall take the following actions to ensure that Merchants that accept American Express General Purpose Cards as payment for goods or services are notified of this Permanent Injunction and the Rules changes that American Express makes pursuant to this Permanent Injunction. Within ten (10) business days after the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, American Express shall furnish to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States, for the approval of the Department of Justice, in consultation with the Representative Plaintiff States, a proposed form of written notification to be provided to Merchants:

1. describing the Rules changes made pursuant to this Permanent Injunction;

2. informing Merchants that they are permitted to engage in any of the practices enumerated in Sections III.A.1 through III.A.8 of this Permanent Injunction; and

3. informing each such Merchant that American Express will no longer enforce any provision in any agreement between American Express and the Merchant that American Express would be prohibited from entering into or enforcing pursuant to Section III.A of this Permanent Injunction. American Express shall include the following statement in each such written notification:

A federal court has ruled that American Express violated the law by prohibiting merchants from influencing the payment form that their customers use. As a result of that ruling, you may now favor any credit card brand that you wish, by, for example, communicating to customers which credit card brand you would prefer that they use, telling customers which credit card brands are the most or least expensive for you, or offering discounts or incentives to customers to use the credit card brand you prefer. Consistent with the federal court's ruling, you may not, however, disparage or mischaracterize the American Express brand or impose a surcharge (as opposed to a discount) on customers who use an American Express credit card.

Within five (5) business days after receiving the approval of the Department of Justice, American Express shall make reasonable efforts to furnish the approved notification described above, together with a paper or electronic copy of this Permanent Injunction (including by providing a hyperlink to the Permanent Injunction in an email communication) to each Merchant that is permitted to accept American Express General Purpose Cards as payment for goods or services. For any Merchant that accepts American Express General Purpose Cards by virtue of contracts with third-party processors, such as External Sales Agents, OnePoint partners, or OptBlue partners, American Express shall give notice in compliance with this Section IV.C either directly to the Merchant or by directing such Person to provide notice in compliance with this Section IV.C to the Merchant.

D. Within five (5) business days of entering into any agreement permitted by Section III.B.3 of this Permanent Injunction, American Express shall furnish electronically to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States a complete copy of the agreement (including any attachments or appendices).

E. American Express shall furnish to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States quarterly, beginning ninety (90) days after the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, (i) a list of each Merchant whose right or ability to accept American Express General Purpose Cards as payment for goods or services was terminated or suspended by American Express for any reason during the preceding quarter; and (ii) a statement of the basis or bases for American Express's decision to terminate or suspend each Merchant's acceptance of American Express General Purpose Cards.

F. Upon communicating to any Merchant that American Express might terminate, or intends to terminate, or has terminated, the right or ability of the Merchant to accept American Express General Purpose Cards as payment for goods or services, American Express shall include a written notice to the Merchant concerning its protected right to engage in steering under this Permanent Injunction. As used in this Section IV.F, "terminate," "terminated," or "termination" include allowing a Merchant's contract to expire on the basis of the dates therein.

1. The written notice shall inform the Merchant that it can file a complaint or inquiry with the Department of Justice if the Merchant believes it was threatened with termination or terminated for having engaged in steering or because American Express wrongly determined that the Merchant was disparaging or mischaracterizing American Express's Brand.

2. Within five (5) business days after the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, the Government shall furnish to American Express the name and full contact

information for the representative from the Department of Justice appointed to receive complaints and comments from Merchants under this Section IV.F.

3. Within ten (10) business days after the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, American Express shall furnish a proposed form of notice to the Department of Justice for its comment. The notice shall include the name and full contact information for the representative from the Department of Justice appointed to receive complaints and comments from Merchants.

4. If the parties cannot resolve any disputes regarding the language of the notice, they shall apply to the court for judicial resolution thereof.

G. Within thirty (30) days after the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, American Express shall furnish to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States an affidavit describing the actions it took to comply with Sections IV.A, IV.B, and IV.C of this Permanent Injunction.

H. American Express shall provide notice to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States thirty (30) days in advance of implementing any new or amended Rule that restricts, limits, or restrains how any Merchant accepts, processes, promotes, or encourages use of (i) Other General Purpose Cards, or (ii) debit cards. Rules subject to this Section IV.H include, but are not limited to, those described in Section IV.B of this Permanent Injunction.

V. COMPLIANCE AND ENFORCEMENT PROCEDURES

A. For purposes of determining or securing compliance with this Permanent Injunction, or of determining whether the Permanent Injunction should be modified or vacated, and subject to any legally recognized privilege, from time to time, duly authorized

representatives of the Department of Justice or the Representative Plaintiff States, including consultants and other persons retained by the Department of Justice or the Representative Plaintiff States, shall, upon written request of an authorized representative of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division or a joint written request by authorized representatives of each Representative Plaintiff State, and on reasonable notice to American Express, be permitted:

1. access during regular business hours to inspect and copy, or at the option of the Department of Justice or the Representative Plaintiff States, to require American Express to provide to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States paper or electronic copies of all books, ledgers, accounts, records, data, and documents in the possession, custody, or control of American Express, relating to any matters contained in this Permanent Injunction; and

2. to interview, either informally or on the record, American Express's officers, employees, or agents, who may have their counsel present, regarding such matters. The interviews shall be subject to the reasonable convenience of the interviewee and without restraint or interference by American Express.

B. Upon the reasonable written request of an authorized representative of the Assistant Attorney General in charge of the Antitrust Division or a joint written request by authorized representatives of each Representative Plaintiff State, American Express shall submit written reports or respond to written interrogatories, under oath, relating to any of the matters contained in this Permanent Injunction. Written reports authorized under this paragraph may require American Express to conduct, at its cost, an independent audit or analysis relating to any of the matters contained in this Permanent Injunction.

C. No information or documents obtained by the means provided in Section V.A or V.B of this Permanent Injunction shall be divulged by the Department of Justice or any Plaintiff State to any person other than an authorized representative of the executive branch of the United States or the Attorney General's Office of any Plaintiff State, except in the course of legal proceedings to which the United States or the relevant Plaintiff State(s) is a party (including grand jury proceedings), or for the purpose of securing compliance with this Permanent Injunction, or as otherwise required by law.

D. If at the time information or documents are furnished by American Express to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States, American Express represents and identifies in writing the material in any such information or documents to which a claim of protection may be asserted under Rule 26(c)(1)(G) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, and American Express marks each pertinent page of such material, "Subject to claim of protection under Rule 26(c)(1)(G) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure," then the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States shall give American Express ten (10) days' notice prior to divulging such material in any civil or administrative proceeding.

E. To ensure its compliance with this Permanent Injunction and the antitrust laws, American Express shall perform the activities enumerated below in Sections V.E.1 through V.E.8 of this Permanent Injunction. The Chief Compliance Officer of American Express (or other officer designated by American Express to ensure compliance with this Permanent Injunction) shall be responsible for supervising American Express's efforts to comply with this Permanent Injunction and performance of the following:

1. furnishing a copy of this Permanent Injunction, within thirty (30) days of its Effective Date, to each senior officer of American Express and to each American Express

employee who has direct contact with Merchants or who supervises employees who have direct contact with Merchants;

2. furnishing a copy of this Permanent Injunction in a timely manner to each officer or employee who succeeds to any position identified in Section V.E.1 of this Permanent Injunction;

3. ensuring that each person identified in Sections V.E.1 and V.E.2 of this Permanent Injunction receives training annually on the meaning and requirements of this Permanent Injunction;

4. obtaining, within sixty (60) days after the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction and on each anniversary of the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, from each person identified in Sections V.E.1 and V.E.2 of this Permanent Injunction, and thereafter maintaining, a certification that each such person (i) has read, understands, and agrees to abide by the terms of this Permanent Injunction; and (ii) is not aware of any violation of this Permanent Injunction or the antitrust laws or has reported any potential violation to the Chief Compliance Officer of American Express;

5. communicating annually to American Express's employees that they may disclose to the Chief Compliance Officer of American Express, without reprisal, information concerning any potential violation of this Permanent Injunction or the antitrust laws;

6. taking appropriate action, within five (5) business days of discovering or receiving credible information concerning an actual or potential violation of this Permanent Injunction, to terminate or modify American Express's conduct to assure compliance with this Permanent Injunction; and, within ten (10) business days of discovering or receiving such information, providing to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States a

description of the actual or potential violation of this Permanent Injunction and the corrective actions taken;

7. furnishing to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States on a quarterly basis electronic copies of any non-privileged communications with any Person containing allegations of American Express's noncompliance with any provision of this Permanent Injunction; and

8. providing to the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States annually, on or before the anniversary of the Effective Date of this Permanent Injunction, a written statement as to the fact and manner of American Express's compliance with Sections III and IV of this Permanent Injunction, and including the training or instructional materials supplied by American Express, pursuant to Section V.E.3 of this Permanent Injunction, to employees who have direct contact with Merchants.

F. Third parties may submit complaints concerning American Express's compliance with this Permanent Injunction to the Department of Justice, to the Representative Plaintiff States, or to the Chief Compliance Officer of American Express.

VI. ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS


A. This court retains jurisdiction to enable the Department of Justice, the Representative Plaintiff States, any other Plaintiff State (after consultation with the Department of Justice and the Representative Plaintiff States), or American Express to apply to this court at any time for, or to act sua sponte to issue, further orders and directions as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out or construe this Permanent Injunction, to modify any of its provisions, to enforce compliance, and to punish violations of its provisions.

B. Nothing in this Permanent Injunction is intended to make any ruling or express any view about any Rule involving surcharging. Nothing in this Permanent Injunction is intended to make any ruling or express any view about the terms of the pending class settlement in 11-MD-2221 (NGG) (RER) (E.D.N.Y.). Nothing in this Permanent Injunction shall limit the right of the United States or of the Plaintiff States to investigate and bring actions to prevent or restrain violations of the antitrust laws concerning any Rule of American Express, including any current Rule and any Rule adopted in the future.

C. Unless this court grants an extension, this Permanent Injunction shall expire by its own terms and without further action of this court ten (10) years after its Effective Date, provided that, at any time prior to its expiration, the court may sua sponte or on the application of the Department of Justice or any Plaintiff State extend the Permanent Injunction by one or more one-year periods, if necessary to ensure effective relief.

SO ORDERED.

Dated: Brooklyn, New York
April 30, 2015

s/ Nicholas G. Garaufis

NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS
United States District Judge

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
EASTERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

-----X

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, et al.,

Plaintiffs,

MEMORANDUM

-against-

10-CV-4496 (NGG) (RER)

AMERICAN EXPRESS COMPANY and
AMERICAN EXPRESS TRAVEL RELATED
SERVICES COMPANY, INC.,

Defendants.

-----X

NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS, United States District Judge.

I. INTRODUCTION

Following a lengthy bench trial, the court issued Findings of Fact and Conclusions of Law (the “Decision”) on February 19, 2015, finding that the Non-Discrimination Provisions (the “NDPs”) maintained by American Express Company and American Express Travel Related Services Company (collectively, “Defendants,” “American Express,” or “Amex”) constitute an unlawful restraint on trade under Section 1 of the Sherman Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1. (Decision (Dkt. 619).) Pursuant to a Scheduling Order also issued on February 19, 2015 (“Scheduling Order”) (Dkt. 620), the parties made submissions to the court concerning the proper scope of permanent injunctive relief in this case. (See Joint Submission as to Remedy (“Joint Submission”) (Dkt. 621); Pls.’ Mem. in Supp. of Proposed Final J. (“Gov’t’s Br.”) (Dkt. 622); Defs.’ Mem. of Law in Supp. of Defs.’ Proposed Final J. (“Defs.’ Br.”) (Dkt. 623); Pls.’ Reply Mem. in Supp. of Proposed Final J. (“Gov’t’s Reply”) (Dkt. 626); Defs.’ Reply Mem. of Law in Further Supp. of Defs.’ Proposed Final J. (“Defs.’ Reply”) (Dkt. 627).) The Government and Defendants each submitted proposed remedial orders (see Gov’t’s Proposed J. (Joint Submission,

App. 1 (Dkt. 621-1)); Defs.' Proposed J. (Joint Submission, App. 2 (Dkt. 621-2))), as well as an appendix reflecting a comparison of the two proposals (see Joint Submission, App. 3 (Dkt. 621-3)). In addition, the court granted leave to two sets of non-party merchants and to merchant Southwest Airlines to submit comments concerning the proposed remedy. (See Not. by Non-Party Merchants Concerning Proposed Remedy (Dkt. 631); Not. by Class Pls. in 11-MD-2211 (E.D.N.Y.) Concerning Gov't's Proposed J. (Dkt. 634); Not. by Southwest Airlines Regarding Proposed Relief (Dkt. 635).) With leave of court, American Express and the Government each filed consolidated responses to the three merchant comments. (See Pls.' Mem. in Reply to Non-Party Filings Regarding Remedy (Dkt. 636); Resp. of Defs. to Non-Party Comments (Dkt. 637).)

Having considered the submissions, including the specific remedies proposed by the Government and American Express, and on the basis of the well-developed factual record introduced during the trial, the Court issues this Memorandum to explain certain of the provisions contained in the Order Entering Permanent Injunction as to the American Express Defendants (the "Permanent Injunction") that the court enters concurrently with this Memorandum.

As the court has explained on numerous occasions, the court believes that given the complexity of the general purpose credit and charge card network services industry, "the parties themselves are likely best equipped to determine how American Express's merchant regulations might be rewritten so as to satisfy American Express's interests and yet comport with the Sherman Act." (Scheduling Order at 2.) The court therefore encouraged the parties to jointly propose a remedy. (See id. at 1-3.) Unfortunately, as demonstrated by the competing proposed orders, the parties have reached only limited common ground. Thus, the court must resolve

numerous disputes, concerning both core and collateral issues. This Memorandum explains the reasoning behind the court's resolution of the parties' core disputes.¹

As discussed more fully below, with some exceptions and with certain modifications, the court generally adopts proposals made by the Government and rejects competing proposals made by Defendants. Although the court invited American Express to play an active role in the construction of the Permanent Injunction, American Express's core proposals were, considering the record before the court, too narrow or unwieldy to effectuate the remedial objectives of a permanent injunction under the Sherman Act. Through its proposals, American Express would have the court ignore the Supreme Court's guidance in the antitrust context that:

[t]he District Court is not obliged to assume, contrary to common experience, that a violator of the antitrust laws will relinquish the fruits of his violation more completely than the court requires him to do. And advantages already in hand may be held by methods more subtle and informed, and more difficult to prove, than those which, in the first place, win a market. When the purpose to restrain trade appears from a clear violation of law, it is not necessary that all of the untraveled roads to that end be left open and that only the worn one be closed.

Nat'l Soc'y of Prof'l Eng'rs v. United States, 435 U.S. 679, 698 (1978) (quoting Int'l Salt Co. v. United States, 332 U.S. 392, 400 (1947)).

The Permanent Injunction is designed to eliminate the consequences of Defendants' past violation of the Sherman Act and to encourage a functional and fair market in the future. It is

¹ This Memorandum does not provide a detailed explanation for the court's resolution of less significant disputes between the parties. These include the court's adoption of the Government's proposed definition of "Merchant" (see Permanent Injunction § I.M), adoption of the Government's proposed provision authorizing exclusive-steering agreements between Amex and merchants under certain circumstances (see Permanent Injunction §§ III.B.3, IV.D), adoption (as modified by the court) of American Express's proposed provision confirming its right to steer cardholders toward particular merchants (see Permanent Injunction § III.B.6), adoption (as modified by the court) of the Government's proposed provisions governing notice to merchants of the court's Decision and Permanent Injunction (see Permanent Injunction § IV.C), rejection of American Express's proposed definition of "Rule" (see Defs.' Proposed J. § I.22), rejection of American Express's proposed provision regarding marketing benefits and other services (see Defs.' Proposed J. § III.B.6), and rejection of American Express's proposal that would have required merchants engaging in steering to provide notice to Amex (see Defs.' Proposed J. § III.B.9). Finally, the court notes that while it has drawn largely from the parties' proposals, it has also made its own additions and subtractions to the language, including adjustments to certain time periods.

structured to clarify which rights merchants now have, and confirms which powers American Express retains. The Permanent Injunction contains detailed notice provisions to ensure that Amex-accepting merchants receive notification of the changes to the NDPs and of their nascent ability to steer customers toward particular credit card brands. It also contains thorough compliance provisions to guarantee that American Express meets its obligations and changes its perception of and response to steering by merchants. The court does not seek to punish Defendants or to impose punitive terms upon them, and the court is cognizant of the fact that the implementation of the Permanent Injunction will require Defendants to expend significant efforts and to alter the ways in which they engage with merchants. This result flows from the findings contained in the court's Decision, and is a result that the Sherman Act is designed to provide.

II. LEGAL STANDARD

In an antitrust case, “courts have an obligation, once a violation of the antitrust laws has been established, to protect the public from a continuation of the harmful and unlawful activities.” United States v. Parke, Davis & Co., 362 U.S. 29, 48 (1960). An antitrust remedy should “pry open to competition a market that has been closed by defendants’ illegal restraints.” Int’l Salt Co. v. United States, 332 U.S. 392, 401 (1947), abrogated on other grounds by Ill. Tool Works Inc. v. Indep. Ink, Inc., 547 U.S. 28 (2006). The remedy should seek “both to avoid a recurrence of the violation and to eliminate its consequences,” Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs v. United States, 435 U.S. 679, 697 (1978), and to “cure the ill effects of the illegal conduct, and assure the public freedom from its continuance,” United States v. U.S. Gypsum Co., 340 U.S. 76, 88 (1950). See also Ford Motor Co. v. United States, 405 U.S. 562, 573 (1972) (“The relief in an antitrust case must be ‘effective to redress the violations’ and ‘to restore competition.’” (quoting United States v. E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co., 366 U.S. 316, 326 (1956))). The relief ordered

should be based “on some clear ‘indication of a significant causal connection between the conduct enjoined or mandated and the violation found directed toward the remedial goal intended.’” United States v. Microsoft Corp., 253 F.3d 34, 105 (D.C. Cir. 2001) (quoting 3 Phillip E. Areeda & Herbert Hovenkamp, Antitrust Law ¶ 653(b) (1996)). The punishment of a defendant for its prior transgressions is not, however, a proper remedial purpose. See, e.g., Hartford-Empire Co. v. United States, 323 U.S. 386, 409 (1945) (“[W]e may not impose penalties in the guise of preventing future violations.”). Thus, the remedy should not “adopt overly regulatory requirements which involve the judiciary in the intricacies of business management.” New York v. Microsoft Corp., 224 F. Supp. 2d 76, 100 (D.D.C. 2002) (citing United States v. Paramount Pictures, 334 U.S. 131, 163 (1948)), aff’d sub. nom Massachusetts v. Microsoft Corp., 373 F.3d 1199 (D.C. Cir. 2004).

Absent an adequate remedy in an antitrust case, the Government may have “won a lawsuit [but] lost a cause.” Int’l Salt, 332 U.S. at 491. Accordingly, district courts “are invested with large discretion to model their judgments to fit the exigencies of the particular case.” Int’l Salt, 332 U.S. at 400-01. It “is entirely appropriate” for an antitrust remedy to “go[] beyond a simple proscription against the precise conduct previously pursued.” Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 698. A district court thus has “broad power to restrain acts which are of the same type or class as unlawful acts which the court has found to have been committed or whose commission in the future unless enjoined, may fairly be anticipated from the defendant’s conduct in the past.” Zenith Radio Corp. v. Hazeltine Research, Inc., 395 U.S. 100, 132 (1969) (quoting N.L.R.B. v. Express Publ’g Co., 312 U.S. 426, 435 (1941)). “[I]t is well settled that once the Government has successfully borne the considerable burden of establishing a violation of law, all

doubts as to the remedy are to be resolved in its favor.” F. Hoffman-La Roche Ltd. v. Empagran S.A., 542 U.S. 155, 171 (2004) (quoting E.I. du Pont de Nemours, 366 U.S. at 334)).

More generally, as Defendants emphasize in their submissions, a court entering a permanent injunction in any case must not misuse its equitable powers under Rule 65 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. See Fed. R. Civ. P. 65(d); City of New York v. Mickalis Pawn Shop, LLC, 645 F.3d 114, 144 (2d Cir. 2011) (“Although a district court has ‘a wide range of discretion in framing an injunction in terms it deems reasonable to prevent wrongful conduct,’ it is nonetheless ‘the essence of equity jurisdiction’ that a court is only empowered ‘to grant relief no broader than necessary to cure the effects of the harm caused by the violation.’” (quoting Forschner Grp., Inc. v. Arrow Trading Co., 124 F.3d 402, 206 (2d Cir. 1997))). While the Second Circuit has warned, generally, that “[i]njunctive relief should be narrowly tailored to fit specific legal violations” and “should not impose unnecessary burdens on lawful activity,” Waldman Publ’g Corp. v. Landoll, Inc., 43 F.3d 775, 785 (2d Cir. 1994) (citation omitted), in the antitrust context, the Supreme Court has made clear that a court issuing an antitrust remedy is authorized to constrain a defendant’s otherwise protected conduct, see, e.g., Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 697-98 (“In fashioning a remedy, the District Court may, of course, consider the fact that its injunction may impinge upon rights that would otherwise be constitutionally protected, but those protections do not prevent it from remedying the antitrust violations.”); F.T.C. v. Nat’l Lead Co., 352 U.S. 419, 430 (1957) (“[D]ecrees often suppress a lawful device when it is used to carry out an unlawful purpose.”).

III. DISCUSSION

The court now turns to the core disputes between the parties concerning the scope of the Permanent Injunction. Although the parties have agreed on certain definitions and provisions, the most significant aspects of the remedy require judicial resolution.

A. The NDPs

In its Scheduling Order, the court invited the parties to propose new language for the NDPs, noting that “[f]ashioning appropriate relief in this case will require certain of the provisions in the NDPs to be excised entirely,” while “[i]t may be possible . . . for other challenged clauses to be revised, amended, or recharacterized in such a way that considers the interests of both Plaintiffs and Defendants.” (Scheduling Order at 2.) The Government’s proposed judgment not only identifies language that, in the Government’s view, must be excised, but also proposes affirmative contractual language informing merchants of their right to engage in steering. (See Gov’t’s Proposed J. § V.B.) American Express, on the other hand, argues that the Government’s proposal to include specific changes to the contractual language is “unnecessary,” since “American Express will be subject to the Final Judgment that is entered in this case and . . . will have every incentive to ensure that it remains in compliance with that order.” (Defs.’ Br. at 49.) American Express further argues that its “able transactional counsel,” and not the court or the Government, “are in the best position to draft the specific language that would be necessary to effectuate the Court’s order while protecting American Express’s legitimate business interests.” (Id.; see also id. (“American Express has not found any precedent in which a Court unilaterally made specific, wide-ranging edits to a firm’s contractual language as part of a final judgment in a Section 1 case.”).)

The court agrees in part with the Government and in part with Defendants. After years of litigation between the parties (in addition to ongoing litigation between American Express and non-party merchants), a remedy that does not identify specific contractual language that is no longer enforceable merely kicks the can down the proverbial road. The Permanent Injunction must, at a minimum, identify the language currently contained in the NDPs rendered unenforceable by the court's Decision. Thus, in § IV.B of the Permanent Injunction, the court identifies language, currently contained in the NDPs, that is no longer enforceable.

The court does not, however, find it appropriate, for lack of a better phrase, to put words into American Express's mouth. Thus, the Permanent Injunction does not mandate Amex to include specific language in its contracts with merchants. (Compare, e.g., Permanent Injunction § IV.B.2 (striking unenforceable language), with Gov't's Proposed J. § V.B.2 (proposing that Amex include affirmative language in contracts notifying merchants of their right to steer and providing examples of such steering).) Other provisions of the Permanent Injunction ensure that (1) merchants will be aware of their rights, and (2) American Express will not undermine the remedy by including improper or overly restrictive language in its revised contracts. First, all merchants will receive ample notice of the court's Decision and Permanent Injunction (see Permanent Injunction § IV.C), and any merchant that is terminated by Amex or threatened with termination will receive additional notice (see Permanent Injunction § IV.F). Second, whenever American Express plans to implement changes to the way it regulates merchants' acceptance of other brands of credit cards or of debit cards, it must provide notice to the Government. (See Permanent Injunction § IV.H.)

In one, limited context, the court does include specific language that American Express may include in its contracts with merchants without violating the terms of the Permanent

Injunction. (See Permanent Injunction § IV.B.4.) Pursuant to § III.B.5 of the Permanent Injunction, American Express remains authorized to require a merchant engaged in steering to indicate, in a limited manner, its acceptance of American Express. See also infra Part III.D.1. Thus, where the NDPs before required all merchants communicating payment methods to customers to “display [Amex] Marks according to [its] guidelines and as prominently and in the same manner as any Other Payment Products,” Amex’s merchant contracts can still (if Amex chooses) require merchants that engage in steering to “post limited signage at the point of sale (including online or on mobile services) or store entry or communicate orally that the Merchants accept [Amex].” (See Permanent Injunction § IV.B.4.) As discussed in more detail below, this language strikes an appropriate balance between allowing merchants to effectively steer, and protecting Defendants’ legitimate interest in requiring merchants who steer away from Amex to at least inform customers that they also accept American Express.² As with other provisions of its merchant contracts, Amex is authorized to instead draft alternative language that comports with the Permanent Injunction, upon notice to the Government. (See Permanent Injunction § IV.H.) The court includes affirmative contractual language in § IV.B.4 to provide the parties a “safe harbor” of acceptable language concerning merchant signage and oral communications.

B. Boundaries of Permitted Steering

The parties sharply dispute the boundaries of permitted merchant steering. American Express argues that, based on the court’s Decision and the trial record, steering should be allowed only to a “Less Expensive General Purpose Card,” as determined on a transaction-by-transaction basis. In other words, under Amex’s proposal, steering would be allowed only if the merchant—using a calculation of “All-In Merchant Fee” supplied by Defendants—determines

² In addition, the court did not strike from the NDPs language that makes clear that American Express can require all merchants to indicate their acceptance of Amex whenever a customer affirmatively asks what forms of payment are accepted.

that for the particular transaction, accepting the customer's particular non-Amex-branded credit card would cost the merchant less money. In addition, under Amex's proposal, the Permanent Injunction would not protect a merchant's right to steer to products outside of credit and charge card products, including debit cards. In response, the Government argues that Amex's "Less Expensive Card" and transaction-based approach would undermine the remedy and allow Defendants, rather than merchants, to determine when a merchant may steer. In addition, the Government argues that although the court's Decision held that the relevant market for purposes of its market power analysis excludes debit cards, allowing steering only between general purpose credit and charge cards "would only deter merchants from engaging in steering in the first place, including steering among general purpose cards, and would hinder restoration of competition among general purpose card networks." (Gov't's Br. at 14.) Accordingly, the Government proposes a remedy that would allow steering to any "Form of Payment," a term defined by the Government to include cash, check, debit, "or any other means by which Customers pay for goods or services." (See Gov't's Proposed J. § II.I.)

For the reasons discussed below, the court rejects American Express's proposals that steering be permitted only on a transaction-by-transaction basis and only to a "Less Expensive General Purpose Card." In addition, although the court agrees that the implementation of an effective remedy in this case must allow a merchant to steer, in certain circumstances, to brands of debit, the court rejects the Government's overly broad proposal that the remedy also protect steering to other forms of payment, such as cash and check.³

³ Of course, other sources of law outside of the scope of the Permanent Injunction, such as the Durbin Amendment to the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010, may protect certain forms of steering to certain forms of payment. (See generally Decision at 30-31.)

1. Amex’s “Less Expensive General Purpose Card” Proposal

Amex argues that the “Decision—and the Government’s entire theory of competitive effects—is premised on the theory that merchants need the ability to steer to lower cost [general purpose credit and charge] cards to enhance competition among the [general purpose credit and charge] card networks for merchant business.” (Defs.’ Br. at 9.) While true that in most instances, rational merchants will want to steer customers toward credit cards that cost them less money to accept, it is not American Express’s right to perform such a calculation, or to force merchants to make such a calculation on the basis of American Express’s pre-defined terms. The trial record demonstrated that merchants are able to make price comparisons, and that certain merchants care about non-price features, such as speed of pay or treatment of refunds. In other words, as the court noted in its Decision, “the law does not permit American Express to decide on behalf of the entire market which legitimate forms of interbrand competition should be available and which should not.” (Decision at 136.) Cf. F.T.C. v. Ind. Fed’n of Dentists, 476 U.S. 447, 482 (1986) (“The [defendant] is not entitled to pre-empt the working of the market by deciding for itself that its customers do not need that which they demand.”).⁴

2. Amex’s Transaction-Based Approach

In tandem with its “Less Expensive General Purpose Card” proposal, Amex posits that “the only way to ensure that merchants are steering to lower cost cards, and thereby acting in a manner consistent with the Court’s . . . Decision, is to require that the cost comparison be done at the transaction level.” (Defs.’ Br. at 11.) Again, Amex seeks to continue its control of merchant decision-making, rather than to allow merchants to decide what is best for themselves. It is the merchant’s prerogative to determine whether to steer on a general, brand level (and increase its

⁴ If American Express believes that merchants and/or consumers do not understand the true relative costs of accepting Amex credit cards compared to other credit cards, it is of course permitted to educate merchants and consumers.

own costs for those transactions where it happens to steer to a particular Visa card that ultimately costs more to accept than the customer's Amex card), or whether to steer on a transactional basis. The trial record and the Decision include many examples of general, brand-specific steering, and a limitation on steering to the level of a specific, anticipated transaction would severely undermine the remedy.

3. Steering to Debit Brands

The parties dispute whether American Express should be permitted to bar merchants from steering customers toward debit cards and other forms of payment, such as cash and check. American Express argues that, "consistent with the Court's market definition findings, . . . the conduct that the Court's remedy should redress has nothing to do with non-[general purpose credit card] payment forms," such as debit. (Defs.' Br. at 17, 19.) The Government responds that "Amex has no basis for demanding the right, unavailable to Visa or MasterCard, to block merchants from attempting to steer customers to payment forms outside the relevant market, including to particular brands of those payment forms." (Gov't's Br. at 13.)

As reflected in § III.A of the Permanent Injunction, the court has determined that in order to implement an effective remedy in this case—in other words, "to allow Merchants to attempt to influence the General Purpose Cards that a Customer uses by providing choices and information in a competitive market"—merchants must be allowed to steer toward particular brands of debit cards, in addition to steering between brands of credit cards. (Permanent Injunction § III.A.) The Permanent Injunction does not, however, expressly protect steering to other forms of payment, such as cash and check, although other sources of law provide such protection in certain circumstances.

The court acknowledges, as Amex emphasizes, that it determined in its Decision that debit and credit network services comprise separate markets. (See Decision at 37-61.) However, the mere fact that debit cards are not part of the general purpose credit and charge card network services market does not mean that the court lacks the power to include brands of debit cards within the scope of the Permanent Injunction. In tailoring the terms of the remedy to this particular case, a pragmatic approach is necessary. The fact of the matter is that the major brands of credit cards (such as Visa and MasterCard) also sponsor debit cards—it is therefore impossible for merchants to effectively steer between brands of credit without the authority to, in certain cases, in effect steer a customer toward a debit card. Under American Express’s proposal, a merchant would be constrained to state that it “prefers Visa credit cards,” or that customers who use “MasterCard credit cards” receive an upgrade. But a merchant may want to steer by stating simply that it “prefers Visa,” or that customers who use a “MasterCard” receive an upgrade, or even by prominently displaying just the Discover logo. Excluding brands of debit cards from the scope of the permitted steering would chill merchant steering and could render illusory the rights provided by the Permanent Injunction. Thus, Amex cannot prohibit a merchant from posting a sign stating that it prefers a particular brand, where that brand name encompasses both credit and debit cards.⁵

Finally, the court expressly does not include brands of debit cards within the scope of § III.A.7 of the Permanent Injunction. Thus, while a merchant has the right under the Permanent Injunction to communicate to customers the cost of accepting American Express, or the relative

⁵ This is not the first case in which an antitrust injunction has covered a product not within the relevant market. See, e.g., Int’l Boxing Club of N.Y. v. United States, 358 U.S. 242, 262 (1959) (upholding injunction that “went beyond the relevant market which has been considered for purposes of determining the Sherman Act violations,” because “the relief [] must be broader than the [relevant market] because the evil to be remedied is broader.” (internal quotation marks and alterations omitted)). Indeed, debit was included within the terms of the injunction in the Visa litigation, even though the court, like this one, determined that credit and debit comprised separate markets. See United States v. Visa U.S.A., Inc., 163 F. Supp. 2d 322, 408 (S.D.N.Y. 2001) (“Moreover, including debit as a necessary part of the remedy does not put it in the same product market with general purpose cards.”).

costs of accepting different brands of credit cards (and the merchant may do so on an average, rather than transaction-specific, basis), American Express can prohibit merchants from including costs associated with acceptance of debit cards in this calculation, since blending the costs of accepting credit cards and debit cards would likely overstate the difference between the merchant's overall cost of accepting American Express and its cost of accepting other brands, such as Visa and MasterCard, that have both credit and debit cards. (See Permanent Injunction § III.A.7; Defs.' Br. at 16-17.)

C. Termination of Merchants Engaged in Steering

Defendants seek an express provision in the Permanent Injunction that would "confirm . . . that American Express is entitled to exercise its right not to do or continue to do business with a merchant that chooses to steer Card Members away from its Cards." (Defs.' Br. at 26; see also Defs.' Proposed J. § III.B.8.) American Express relies on United States v. Colgate & Co., in which the Supreme Court stated that the Sherman Act "does not restrict the long recognized right of trader or manufacturer engaged in an entirely private business, freely to exercise his own independent discretion as to parties with whom he will deal." 250 U.S. 300, 307 (1910); see also, e.g., Monsanto Co. v. Spray-Rite Serv. Corp., 465 U.S. 752, 761 (1984) ("A manufacturer of course generally has a right to deal, or refuse to deal, with whomever it likes, as long as it does so independently." (citing Colgate, 250 U.S. at 307)); United States v. Bausch & Lomb Optical Co., 321 U.S. 707, 728-29 (1944) ("But in no instance has [Congress] indicated an intention to interfere with ordinary commercial practices. In a business, such as [defendant's], which deals in a specialty of a luxury or near-luxury character, the right to select its customers may well be the most essential factor in the maintenance of the highest standards of service.").

The Government responds that allowing American Express to terminate a merchant who opts to lawfully steer would amount to “explicit Court authorization” for Amex “to achieve the same anticompetitive objective that the Court condemned in its Decision.” (Gov’t’s Br. at 14.) Even where the Supreme Court has recognized the Colgate doctrine, the Government argues, it has also described the breadth of the district court’s equitable power and the authority of the district court to take “action [that] reasonably tends to dissipate the restraints and prevent evasions.” Bausch & Lomb, 321 U.S. at 726.

The court recognizes that, in the abstract, Defendants’ argument is appealing. But it would be an absurd result if the Colgate doctrine completely suppressed the district court’s authority under the Sherman Act to issue appropriate relief, and thereby authorized Amex to continue, through its market power and a non-contractual “refusal to deal,” the very practice deemed unlawful in the court’s Decision.

In its Decision, the court concluded that one of American Express’s core business practices—the maintenance and enforcement of the NDPs—violated the Sherman Act. Thus, American Express is not similarly situated to the general “manufacturer” or “trader” described in Colgate, and does not enjoy the same presumptive rights. In other words:

The law violator who would oppose a remedy imposed against him as itself a violation of the law does not stand in the same position as an innocent party; those whom the court has found in the wrong may not oppose a remedy on the ground that it would constitute a wrong if leveled at a non-participant in the litigation. “In fashioning a remedy, the District Court may, of course, consider the fact that its injunction may impinge upon rights that would otherwise be constitutionally protected, but those protections do not prevent it from remedying” the violations.

United States v. Paradise, 480 U.S. 149, 193 n.3 (1987) (quoting Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 697-98). Thus, a district court has discretion under the Sherman Act “to decree relief

effective to redress the violations, whatever the adverse effect of such a decree on private interests.” E.I. du Pont de Nemours, 366 U.S. at 326; see also Nat’l Lead, 352 U.S. at 430 (“[D]ecrees often suppress a lawful device when it is used to carry out an unlawful purpose.”). Indeed, the Supreme Court has previously approved of antitrust remedies that restricted a violator’s rights, including First Amendment rights, see Nat’l Soc’y of Prof’l Eng’rs, 435 U.S. at 698, and patent rights, see United States v. Glaxo Grp. Ltd., 410 U.S. 52, 58-60 (1973) (holding that district court properly limited defendant’s patent rights in antitrust injunction).

Here, the court found that the existence and enforcement of the NDPs was an anticompetitive restraint on trade; Colgate cannot stand for the proposition that a firm’s ordinary right to refuse to deal is sacrosanct under circumstances where that firm could use its market power to impose the same exact harm on competition. Moreover, in its Decision, the court found that cardholder insistence significantly limits a merchant’s ability to cease acceptance of American Express (see Decision at 71-78), and that Amex has actively monitored merchant activity and enforced the NDPs, including terminating merchants for steering (see id. at 31-32). In this particular case, and based on American Express’s prior willingness to stop merchant steering at all costs, granting Amex’s request for an unconditional right to refuse to deal would make the Government’s vindication of the public’s rights entirely illusory. Cf. Int’l Salt, 332 U.S. at 401 (“A public interest served by such civil suits is that they effectively pry open to competition a market that has been closed by defendants’ illegal restraints. If [an antitrust] decree accomplishes less than that, the Government has won a lawsuit and lost a cause.”)

The court also finds persuasive the reasoning of Toys “R” Us, Inc. v. FTC, 221 F.3d 928 (7th Cir. 2000), although, as Defendants note, there are differences between that case and this one. Like this case, which the court has previously described as “not fit[ting] neatly into the

standard taxonomy of federal antitrust law” (Decision at 34), Toys “R” Us involved a complicated series of vertical and horizontal agreements, in which Toys “R” Us (a traditional retailer) attempted to influence the business activities of toy manufacturers and the relationships between toy manufacturers and discount retailers. 221 F.3d at 930-35. An administrative law judge entered a remedy that, inter alia, prohibited Toys “R” Us from “refusing to purchase toys and related products from a supplier because, in whole or in part, that supplier offered to sell or sold toys and related products to any toy discounter.” See id. at 939. Toys “R” Us argued to the administrative law judge (and again on appeal to the Seventh Circuit) that the remedy “trampled on its ability to exercise its rights under Colgate to choose unilaterally the companies with which it wanted to deal.” Id. at 934. The Seventh Circuit rejected this argument, explaining that “unilateral actions of the sort protected by Monsanto and Colgate are not the same thing as a retailer’s request to the manufacturer to change the latter’s business practice.” Id. at 939. In other words, the remedial order barred Toys “R” Us from “tell[ing] the manufacturer what to do,” but still permitted Toys “R” Us “to decide which toys it want[ed] to carry and which ones to drop, based on business considerations such as the expected popularity of the item.” Id. at 939-40. In addition, the Seventh Circuit explained that a remedial provision barring Toys “R” Us from refusing to deal with suppliers that also sold their products to discounters was proper under Colgate, since “[t]hese refusals to deal were the means [Toys “R” Us] used to accomplish the unlawful result, and as such, they are subject to regulation.” Id. at 939, 940 (citing Nat’l Lead, 352 U.S. at 425).

Here, given Amex’s market power, cardholder insistence, and Amex’s prior enforcement of the NDPs, and given the court’s “obligation, once a violation of the antitrust laws has been established, to protect the public from a continuation of the harmful and unlawful activities,”

Parke, Davis & Co., 362 U.S. at 48, the court agrees with the Seventh Circuit’s reasoning in Toys “R” Us that a remedial order can, in this particular circumstance, limit a violator’s right to refuse to deal without running afoul of Colgate. Of course, like Toys “R” Us, American Express remains free to terminate a merchant for reasons other than merchant steering; but, consistent with the court’s findings that Amex has violated the Sherman Act, it is not free to dictate merchants’ business practices (and perpetuate the status quo of merchants not engaging in steering) by threatening to refuse to deal with merchants who exercise their rights pursuant to the Permanent Injunction. Accordingly, the Permanent Injunction does not contain the provision American Express seeks.

In addition, Amex is concerned that it will risk violating the Permanent Injunction if it terminates a steering merchant for a reason other than steering; it also contends that a requirement of pre-termination notice to the Government is contrary to a public policy that favors termination of merchants engaged in illegal activities. (See, e.g., Defs.’ Br. at 29-30 n.15 (“If American Express faces a contempt proceeding every time it cancels a merchant that also happens to be steering, American Express would uniquely be penalized for exercising cancellation rights even when cancellation would be required by law, regulation or prudent business judgment.”).) The court is confident, however, that under the modified notice and reporting requirements imposed by the Permanent Injunction, Amex maintains its ability to terminate merchants for reasons other than steering, including where required by other applicable law. (See Permanent Injunction §§ IV.E (requiring quarterly reporting by Amex to Government of all terminations or suspensions and the reasoning for the actions), IV.F (requiring notice from Amex to any merchant it terminates or threatens with termination).) The court has rejected the Government’s proposal that Amex give advanced notice to the Government whenever it plans to

threaten or terminate a merchant that is engaged in steering, no matter the reason for the termination. (Compare Permanent Injunction § IV.F, with Gov’t’s Proposed J. § V.F.)

D. Additional Clarifications

1. Visa and MasterCard Consent Decree

The parties dispute the significance of the Visa and MasterCard Consent Decree previously entered in this case. (See Final J. as to Defs. MasterCard Int’l Inc. and Visa Inc. (“Consent Decree”) (Dkt. 143).) Amex argues that because a court has greater flexibility in approving a proposed consent decree, “while withholding rights from American Express that were granted to Visa and MasterCard in the Consent Decree in this case would be inappropriately punitive, the fact that the decree with Visa and MasterCard includes certain restrictions on their activity cannot, on its own, form the basis for imposing those same restrictions on American Express.” (Defs.’ Br. at 7.) The Government, on the other hand, argues that “[a] settlement is often a compromise, and thus may encompass less relief than a litigated judgment.” (Gov’t’s Reply at 4 (emphasis in original).) In other words, “when a consent decree is brought to a district judge, because it is a settlement, there are no findings that the defendant has actually engaged in illegal practices. It is therefore inappropriate for the judge to measure the remedies in the decree as if they were fashioned after trial.” United States v. Microsoft Corp., 56 F.3d 1448, 1460-61 (D.C. Cir. 1995) (emphasis in original).

The court appreciates that in their submissions, both parties noted where their proposals parallel or differ from the Consent Decree, and the justifications for those parallels or differences. (See, e.g., Gov’t’s Br., Ex. 2 (table comparing each provision of the parties’ proposed judgments to the Consent Decree); Defs.’ Br. at 41 (arguing that compliance provisions from the Consent Decree are sufficient).) While the court recognizes the interplay between the

Permanent Injunction and the Consent Decree, it also recognizes that the Permanent Injunction must be based on the evidence submitted at trial. The court further recognizes that American Express's business model differs in important ways from that of Visa and MasterCard. Thus, the Permanent Injunction parallels the Consent Decree in some respects, and deviates from the Consent Decree in other respects. The fact that the Permanent Injunction contains a provision that Amex opposes because it does not appear in the Consent Decree does not render such a provision "punitive" (see Defs.' Br. at 37); the fact that the Permanent Injunction contains a provision not in the Consent Decree that the Government opposes does not mean that Amex is inequitably granted rights not available to Visa and MasterCard (see, e.g., Gov't's Br. at 5 ("Thus, the judgment should not provide Amex with opportunities to restrict steering in ways Visa and MasterCard cannot and thus perpetuate the market impediments that this Court found unlawful.")).

2. Communicating Acceptance of Amex

As discussed above, see supra Part III.A, American Express has a legitimate interest in requiring that merchants who steer customers away from Amex cards also communicate to those customers that they accept American Express. The Government argues that Amex should only be allowed to require such a communication where the merchant otherwise communicates to customers which brands it accepts (for example, on a small display at the point of sale indicating all brands accepted). Where a merchant only communicates its preference for certain brands (for example, a sign at the point of sale stating that a merchant prefers Visa, or a sign at the point of sale offering a discount to customers who use a MasterCard, but nothing more), the Government appears to argue that Amex cannot compel a merchant to communicate, in some way, that it also accepts American Express.

The purpose of the Permanent Injunction is not to mislead consumers into believing that a particular merchant that chooses to engage in steering does not, in fact, accept American Express. Rather, as the court explained in the Decision, the removal of the NDPs should increase the flow of truthful information between merchants and customers. (See Decision at 30.) Thus, at the threshold, the court agrees with Defendants that they should have the authority to require merchants that engage in steering to also communicate to customers that they accept American Express. Similarly, the court does not agree with the Government that a provision protecting Amex's ability to enforce signage rules is "unnecessary" and gives Amex an "undue influence with merchant steering." (Gov't's Br. at 18.)

Under § III.B.5 of the Permanent Injunction, American Express has authority to impose signage requirements, but this authority is limited, and in no event is Amex authorized to use rules concerning signage or other merchant communications regarding Amex acceptance to deter or undermine the efficacy of merchant steering. (Permanent Injunction § III.B.5.) Accordingly, at most, Defendants can require that merchants post signage at the point of sale (including online or on mobile services) or store entry or communicate orally that they accept American Express. For example, Amex cannot compel a merchant to do more than post a sticker at the point of sale or store entry indicating all accepted brands, including the preferred brand(s). The power to require anything greater would chill efforts by merchants to steer, and would dilute the effectiveness of steering (for example, it would go too far if a rule required merchants engaging in steering to place an Amex logo on the actual sign attempting to influence customer choice). With respect to online or mobile transactions, the court rejects American Express's proposal that it "shall be entitled to require that the signage indicating American Express acceptance must appear at the earliest point within the payment path at which any such practice occurs." (Defs.'

Proposed J. § III.B.6.) Like traditional merchants (who, under the Permanent Injunction, can indicate their acceptance of Amex at the point of sale or store entry), online and mobile merchants that choose to steer are entitled to determine the appropriate way of reasonably communicating their acceptance of American Express, so long as they communicate to customers at some point in the process that they, in fact, accept American Express.

Finally, as discussed above, under § IV.H of the Permanent Injunction, American Express must give notice to the Government of any changes to its rules governing merchants' acceptance of other credit card brands or debit cards before implementation of those rules. Thus, the Government will be on notice should American Express take a position regarding signage that is contrary to the terms of the Permanent Injunction and this Memorandum, and will be able to seek relief from this court should the Government believe American Express has done so.

3. Disparagement and Surcharging

The parties agree that Defendants should retain the right to prohibit merchants from disparaging or mischaracterizing the Amex brand, but disagree on remedial language. Defendants seek a provision that permits them to adopt rules that “prohibit Merchants from disparaging or mischaracterizing its Brand or making untrue statements about American Express or the Merchant’s All-In Merchant Fee for accepting American Express General Purpose Cards.” (Defs.’ Proposed J. § III.C.) The Government proposes that Amex be permitted only to “prohibit Merchants from disparaging its Brand, including (1) mischaracterizing American Express General Purpose Cards, or (2) engaging in activities that harm American Express’s business or its Brand.” (Gov’t’s Proposed J. § IV.C.) The Non-Party Merchants go further, proposing that the Permanent Injunction expressly define “disparaging” so that Amex cannot take the future position that novel forms of steering not expressly included in the Permanent Injunction are, in

fact, activities that “harm American Express’s business or its Brand.” (Non-Party Merchants’ Comment at 9-10.)

In § III.C of the Permanent Injunction, the court clarifies that Amex is permitted to enforce both rules that prohibit merchants from disparaging its brand and rules that prohibit merchants from mischaracterizing its brand. (Permanent Injunction § III.C.) Included within the umbrella of “mischaracterization” are rules that prohibit merchants from making untrue statements about Amex, or untrue statements about the merchant’s cost for accepting American Express credit cards or other credit cards, or untrue statements about the relative costs of accepting the cards of different brands. (Permanent Injunction § III.C.) The court does not adopt the Non-Party Merchants’ proposal to define “disparaging,” as what conduct constitutes disparagement was not part of the trial in this case. However, the Permanent Injunction does include language, for the avoidance of any doubt, providing that engaging in authorized steering practices—including a merchant communicating the reasonably estimated (including average) cost incurred when a customer uses a particular brand of credit card—cannot constitute a practice that “disparages,” “mischaracterizes,” or “harms” the Amex brand. (See Permanent Injunction § III.C.) The court is confident that the parties and merchants will understand the conduct captured by the concepts of disparagement and mischaracterization. And the Permanent Injunction includes mechanisms for a merchant to file a complaint with the Government should that merchant believe that Defendants are taking an overly broad view of these concepts. (See Permanent Injunction §§ IV.F, V.F.)

Similarly, the court does not adopt the Non-Party Merchants’ proposal to define the concept of “surcharges.” The court is confident that merchants will understand the difference

between a discount and a surcharge, and the definition of surcharging was not part of the trial in this case.

4. Timing

Considering that this is a permanent injunction entered after a full trial, the court rejects American Express's proposal that it have the later of (a) 90 days from the date of entry of the Permanent Injunction, or (b) 90 days following the expiration of any stay of the Permanent Injunction entered by this court or an appellate court, to implement the required changes to its business. (See Defs.' Proposed J. § I.9.) Rather, in the Permanent Injunction, the court orders that within the later of 30 days from the date of entry of the Permanent Injunction, or 30 following the expiration of a stay, Amex (a) cease to engage in the Prohibited Conduct and (b) commence the Required Conduct and notice/compliance requirements. (See, e.g., Permanent Injunction §§ I.G, III.A, IV.A.) The 30-day period of implementation gives Defendants ample time to seek an additional stay of the Permanent Injunction, while also providing that, absent a stay, the process of remedying the instant antitrust violation will begin in earnest.

The court agrees with the Government that a ten-year termination provision (with the possibility for one-year extensions) is appropriate, and rejects Defendants' proposal that would terminate the Permanent Injunction upon the adoption of rules by Visa and MasterCard that prohibit forms of steering authorized by the Permanent Injunction. (Compare Permanent Injunction § VI.C, with Defs.' Proposed J. § VI.C.) If circumstances change, and/or if upon the expiration of the Consent Decree Visa and MasterCard attempt to again bar merchant steering, Amex can, consistent with the Permanent Injunction, seek relief from this court. (See Permanent Injunction § VI.A (reserving the court's jurisdiction over the Permanent Injunction and authorizing the parties to seek further orders or modifications).)

E. Compliance Provisions

Finally, the Government proposes significant compliance provisions, arguing that “Amex should be required to devote as least as much attention to monitoring compliance with the Final Judgment as it did to monitoring merchants’ compliance with its anticompetitive restraints.” (Gov’t’s Br. at 33.) Defendants respond that the “onerous, unnecessary, and unreasonable” compliance provisions are punitive and premised on the Government’s “baseless” assumption that “American Express cannot be trusted to comply with the Court’s Final Judgment.” (Defs.’ Br. at 41, 42.) Defendants propose compliance provisions that parallel those in the Consent Decree, but nothing more.

The court agrees with the Government; considering American Express’s previous, aggressive enforcement of the NDPs, and certain of the positions that it took at trial, robust compliance provisions are necessary to ensure that Amex complies with the Permanent Injunction. It is not yet clear to the court whether American Express has a positive compliance attitude, particularly in light of its unwillingness to agree to some of the Government’s more modest proposals. Contrary to Defendants’ argument, compliance provisions are not reserved only for antitrust violators who engaged in criminal, intentional, or malfeasant conduct. (See Defs.’ Br. at 45; Gov’t’s Reply at 18 & n.12.) For a company of the size of American Express, the compliance provisions included in the Permanent Injunction are not overly costly or burdensome—for example, the court has not appointed an independent, external monitor, although it certainly has the authority to do so. In addition, should Defendants (or the Government, for that matter) believe that the compliance provisions are unworkable, or require adjustments once implemented, they are permitted under the Permanent Injunction to seek modifications from the court.

IV. CONCLUSION

As set forth above, and as embodied in the court's separate Order Entering Permanent Injunction as to the American Express Defendants, the court adopts many of the proposals made by the Government with respect to the proper scope of injunctive relief in this case, with some exceptions, and with certain modifications.

SO ORDERED.

Dated: Brooklyn, New York
April 30, 2015

s/ Nicholas G. Garaufis
NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS
United States District Judge

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
EASTERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK

-----X
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, et al.,

Plaintiffs,

-against-

AMERICAN EXPRESS COMPANY and
AMERICAN EXPRESS TRAVEL RELATED
SERVICES COMPANY, INC.,

Defendants.
-----X

NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS, United States District Judge.

JUDGMENT

10-CV-4496 (NGG) (RER)

WHEREAS, Plaintiffs the United States and the attorneys general of seventeen states brought an antitrust enforcement action against Defendants American Express Company and American Express Travel Related Services Company (“American Express”), challenging American Express’s anti-steering rules as anticompetitive restraints in violation of Section 1 of the Sherman Antitrust Act; and

WHEREAS, the court presided over an approximately seven-week bench trial, during which over thirty fact witnesses and four expert witnesses were called to testify, and over one thousand exhibits were admitted into evidence; and

WHEREAS, following the bench trial, the parties submitted proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law; and

WHEREAS, the court issued its Decision, including Findings of Fact and Conclusions of Law, dated February 19, 2015, finding that Plaintiffs showed by a preponderance of the evidence that American Express’s anti-steering rules violate Section 1 of the Sherman Antitrust Act; and

WHEREAS, the court found that Plaintiffs are entitled to permanent injunctive relief and ordered the parties to submit proposed remedial orders; and

WHEREAS, the court has considered the parties' proposed remedial orders, as well as submissions made with leave of court by certain non-party merchants; and

WHEREAS, the court issued an Order Entering Permanent Injunction as to the American Express Defendants (the "Permanent Injunction"), dated April 30, 2015, and a Memorandum, dated April 30, 2015, setting forth its reasoning, it is hereby

ORDERED, ADJUDGED, AND DECREED that Judgment is entered in favor of Plaintiffs, subject to the terms of the Permanent Injunction.

SO ORDERED.

Dated: Brooklyn, New York
April 30, 2015

s/ Nicholas G. Garaufis
NICHOLAS G. GARAUFIS
United States District Judge

- Sec.
- 15h. Applicability of parens patriae actions.
16. Judgments.
17. Antitrust laws not applicable to labor organizations.
18. Acquisition by one corporation of stock of another.
- 18a. Premerger notification and waiting period.
19. Interlocking directorates and officers.
- 19a, 20. Repealed.
21. Enforcement provisions.
- 21a. Actions and proceedings pending prior to June 19, 1936; additional and continuing violations.
22. District in which to sue corporation.
23. Suits by United States; subpoenas for witnesses.
24. Liability of directors and agents of corporation.
25. Restraining violations; procedure.
26. Injunctive relief for private parties; exception; costs.
- 26a. Restrictions on the purchase of gasohol and synthetic motor fuel.
- 26b. Application of antitrust laws to professional major league baseball.
27. Effect of partial invalidity.
- 27a. Transferred.
28. Repealed.
29. Appeals.
- 30 to 33. Repealed.
34. Definitions applicable to sections 34 to 36.
35. Recovery of damages, etc., for antitrust violations from any local government, or official or employee thereof acting in an official capacity.
36. Recovery of damages, etc., for antitrust violations on claim against person based on official action directed by local government, or official or employee thereof acting in an official capacity.
37. Immunity from antitrust laws.
- 37a. Definitions.
- 37b. Confirmation of antitrust status of graduate medical resident matching programs.
38. Association of marine insurance companies; application of antitrust laws.

HISTORICAL NOTE

This chapter includes among other statutory provisions the Sherman Act, comprising sections 1 to 7 of this title, the Clayton Act, comprising sections 12, 13, 14 to 19, 20, 21, and 22 to 27 of this title and sections 52 and 53 of Title 29, Labor, the Wilson Tariff Act, comprising sections 8 and 9 of this title, the Robinson-Patman Price Discrimination Act, comprising sections 13, 13a, 13b, and 21a of this title, the "Expediting Act", sections 28 and 29 of this title, and the "Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976", comprising sections 15c to 15h, 18a, and 66 of this title. For complete classification of the Hart-Scott-Rodino Act, see Short Title note under section 1 of this title.

CONGRESSIONAL INVESTIGATION OF MONOPOLY

Joint Res. June 16, 1938, ch. 456, 52 Stat. 705, created a Temporary National Economic Committee which was authorized to make a full investigation on monopoly and the concentration of economic power in and financial control over production and distribution of goods and services. The time for submitting the final report under Joint Res. June 16, 1938, ch. 456, 52 Stat. 705, as amended Apr. 26, 1939, ch. 104, §§1, 2, 53 Stat. 624, was extended to Apr. 3, 1941, by Joint Res. Dec. 16, 1940, ch. 932, 54 Stat. 1225. The committee's report was presented to Congress on Mar. 31, 1941, and was published in Senate Document No. 35.

EXECUTIVE ORDER NO. 12022

Ex. Ord. No. 12022, Dec. 1, 1977, 42 F.R. 61441, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12052, Apr. 7, 1978, 43 F.R.

15133, which related to the National Commission for the Review of Antitrust Laws and Procedures, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12258, Dec. 31, 1980, 46 F.R. 1251, formerly set out as a note under section 14 of the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

§ 1. Trusts, etc., in restraint of trade illegal; penalty

Every contract, combination in the form of trust or otherwise, or conspiracy, in restraint of trade or commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations, is declared to be illegal. Every person who shall make any contract or engage in any combination or conspiracy hereby declared to be illegal shall be deemed guilty of a felony, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding \$100,000,000 if a corporation, or, if any other person, \$1,000,000, or by imprisonment not exceeding 10 years, or by both said punishments, in the discretion of the court.

(July 2, 1890, ch. 647, §1, 26 Stat. 209; Aug. 17, 1937, ch. 690, title VIII, 50 Stat. 693; July 7, 1955, ch. 281, 69 Stat. 282; Pub. L. 93-528, §3, Dec. 21, 1974, 88 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 94-145, §2, Dec. 12, 1975, 89 Stat. 801; Pub. L. 101-588, §4(a), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2880; Pub. L. 108-237, title II, §215(a), June 22, 2004, 118 Stat. 668.)

AMENDMENTS

2004—Pub. L. 108-237 substituted "\$100,000,000" for "\$10,000,000", "\$1,000,000" for "\$350,000", and "10" for "three".

1990—Pub. L. 101-588 substituted "\$10,000,000" for "one million dollars" and "\$350,000" for "one hundred thousand dollars".

1975—Pub. L. 94-145 struck out from first sentence two provisos granting anti-trust exemption to State fair trade laws.

1974—Pub. L. 93-528 substituted "a felony, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding one million dollars if a corporation, or, if any other person, one hundred thousand dollars, or by imprisonment not exceeding three years" for "a misdemeanor, and on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding fifty thousand dollars, or by imprisonment not exceeding one year".

1955—Act July 7, 1955, substituted "fifty thousand dollars" for "five thousand dollars".

1937—Act Aug. 17, 1937, inserted two provisos.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2001 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107-72, §4, Nov. 20, 2001, 115 Stat. 650, provided that: "This Act [enacting and amending provisions set out as notes under this section] and the amendments made by this Act shall take effect on September 30, 2001."

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94-145, §4, Dec. 12, 1974, 89 Stat. 801, provided that: "The amendments made by sections 2 and 3 of this Act [amending this section and section 45 of this title] shall take effect upon the expiration of the ninety-day period which begins on the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 12, 1975]."

SHORT TITLE OF 2009 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 111-30, §1, June 19, 2009, 123 Stat. 1775, provided that: "This Act [enacting and amending provisions set out as notes under this section] may be cited as the 'Antitrust Criminal Penalty Enhancement and Reform Act of 2004 Extension Act'."

SHORT TITLE OF 2008 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110-327, §1, Sept. 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 3566, provided that: "This Act [amending provisions set out as

a note under this section] may be cited as the ‘Need-Based Educational Aid Act of 2008.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 2007 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 110-6, §1, Feb. 26, 2007, 121 Stat. 61, provided that: “This Act [amending provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the ‘Antitrust Modernization Commission Extension Act of 2007.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 108-237, title II, §201, June 22, 2004, 118 Stat. 665, provided that: “This title [amending this section and sections 2, 3, and 16 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 16 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Antitrust Criminal Penalty Enhancement and Reform Act of 2004.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107-273, div. C, title IV, §14101, Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1921, provided that: “This title [amending sections 3, 12, 27, and 44 of this title, section 225 of Title 7, Agriculture, section 1413 of Title 30, Mineral Lands and Mining, and section 2135 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare, repealing sections 30 and 31 of this title, enacting provisions set out as a note under section 3 of this title, amending provisions set out as notes under this section and section 8 of this title, and repealing provisions set out as notes under section 15 of this title and section 41309 of Title 49, Transportation] may be cited as the ‘Antitrust Technical Corrections Act of 2002.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 2001 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107-72, §1, Nov. 20, 2001, 115 Stat. 648, provided that: “This Act [enacting and amending provisions set out as notes under this section] may be cited as the ‘Need-Based Educational Aid Act of 2001.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105-297, §1, Oct. 27, 1998, 112 Stat. 2824, provided that: “This Act [enacting section 26b of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 26b of this title] may be cited as the ‘Curt Flood Act of 1998.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1997 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 105-43, §1, Sept. 17, 1997, 111 Stat. 1140, provided that: “This Act [enacting and amending provisions set out as notes below] may be cited as the ‘Need-Based Educational Aid Antitrust Protection Act of 1997.’”

Pub. L. 105-26, §1, July 3, 1997, 111 Stat. 241, provided that: “This Act [amending sections 37 and 37a of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 37 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Charitable Donation Antitrust Immunity Act of 1997.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104-63, §1, Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 687, provided that: “This Act [enacting sections 37 and 37a of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 37 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Charitable Gift Annuity Antitrust Relief Act of 1995.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 101-588, §1, Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2879, provided: “That this Act [amending this section and sections 2, 3, 15a, and 19 of this title and repealing section 20 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Antitrust Amendments Act of 1990.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98-544, §1, Oct. 24, 1984, 98 Stat. 2750, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 34 to 36 of this title and provisions set out as a note under section 34 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Local Government Antitrust Act of 1984.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 97-290, title IV, §401, Oct. 8, 1982, 96 Stat. 1246, provided that: “This title [enacting section 6a of this

title and amending section 45 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Foreign Trade Antitrust Improvements Act of 1982.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 96-493, §1, Dec. 2, 1980, 94 Stat. 2568, provided: “That this Act [enacting section 26a of this title] may be cited as the ‘Gasohol Competition Act of 1980.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94-435, §1, Sept. 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 1383, provided: “That this Act [enacting sections 15c to 15h, 18a, and 66 of this title, amending sections 12, 15b, 16, 26, and 1311 to 1314 of this title, section 1505 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and section 1407 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 8, 15c, 18a, and 1311 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 94-145, §1, Dec. 12, 1975, 89 Stat. 801, provided: “That this Act [amending this section and section 45 of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the ‘Consumer Goods Pricing Act of 1975.’”

SHORT TITLE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 93-528, §1, Dec. 21, 1974, 88 Stat. 1706, provided: “That this Act [amending this section and section 2, 3, 16, 28, and 29 of this title, section 401 of Title 47, Telecommunications, and sections 43, 44, and 45 of former Title 49, Transportation, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 29 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Antitrust Procedures and Penalties Act.’”

SHORT TITLE

Pub. L. 94-435, title III, §305(a), Sept. 30, 1976, 90 Stat. 1397, added immediately following the enacting clause of act July 2, 1890, the following: “That this Act [this section and sections 2 to 7 of this title] may be cited as the ‘Sherman Act.’”

ANTITRUST ENFORCEMENT ENHANCEMENTS AND COOPERATION INCENTIVES

Pub. L. 108-237, title II, §§211-214, June 22, 2004, 118 Stat. 666, 667, as amended by Pub. L. 111-30, §2, June 19, 2009, 123 Stat. 1775; Pub. L. 111-190, §§1-4, June 9, 2010, 124 Stat. 1275, 1276, provided that:

“SEC. 211. SUNSET.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), the provisions of sections 211 through 214 of this subtitle [this note] shall cease to have effect 16 years after the date of enactment of this Act [June 22, 2004].

“(b) EXCEPTIONS.—With respect to—

“(1) a person who receives a marker on or before the date on which the provisions of section 211 through 214 of this subtitle shall cease to have effect that later results in the execution of an antitrust leniency agreement; or

“(2) an applicant who has entered into an antitrust leniency agreement on or before the date on which the provisions of sections 211 through 214 of this subtitle shall cease to have effect,

the provisions of sections 211 through 214 of this subtitle shall continue in effect.

“SEC. 212. DEFINITIONS.

“In this subtitle [subtitle A (§§211-215) of title II of Pub. L. 108-237, amending this section and sections 2 and 3 of this title and enacting this note]:

“(1) ANTITRUST DIVISION.—The term ‘Antitrust Division’ means the United States Department of Justice Antitrust Division.

“(2) ANTITRUST LENIENCY AGREEMENT.—The term ‘antitrust leniency agreement,’ or ‘agreement,’ means a leniency letter agreement, whether condi-

tional or final, between a person and the Antitrust Division pursuant to the Corporate Leniency Policy of the Antitrust Division in effect on the date of execution of the agreement.

“(3) ANTITRUST LENIENCY APPLICANT.—The term ‘antitrust leniency applicant,’ or ‘applicant,’ means, with respect to an antitrust leniency agreement, the person that has entered into the agreement.

“(4) CLAIMANT.—The term ‘claimant’ means a person or class, that has brought, or on whose behalf has been brought, a civil action alleging a violation of section 1 or 3 of the Sherman Act [15 U.S.C. 1, 3] or any similar State law, except that the term does not include a State or a subdivision of a State with respect to a civil action brought to recover damages sustained by the State or subdivision.

“(5) COOPERATING INDIVIDUAL.—The term ‘cooperating individual’ means, with respect to an antitrust leniency agreement, a current or former director, officer, or employee of the antitrust leniency applicant who is covered by the agreement.

“(6) MARKER.—The term ‘marker’ means an assurance given by the Antitrust Division to a candidate for corporate leniency that no other company will be considered for leniency, for some finite period of time, while the candidate is given an opportunity to perfect its leniency application.

“(7) PERSON.—The term ‘person’ has the meaning given it in subsection (a) of the first section of the Clayton Act [15 U.S.C. 12(a)].

“SEC. 213. LIMITATION ON RECOVERY.

“(a) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subsection (d), in any civil action alleging a violation of section 1 or 3 of the Sherman Act [15 U.S.C. 1, 3], or alleging a violation of any similar State law, based on conduct covered by a currently effective antitrust leniency agreement, the amount of damages recovered by or on behalf of a claimant from an antitrust leniency applicant who satisfies the requirements of subsection (b), together with the amounts so recovered from cooperating individuals who satisfy such requirements, shall not exceed that portion of the actual damages sustained by such claimant which is attributable to the commerce done by the applicant in the goods or services affected by the violation.

“(b) REQUIREMENTS.—Subject to subsection (c), an antitrust leniency applicant or cooperating individual satisfies the requirements of this subsection with respect to a civil action described in subsection (a) if the court in which the civil action is brought determines, after considering any appropriate pleadings from the claimant, that the applicant or cooperating individual, as the case may be, has provided satisfactory cooperation to the claimant with respect to the civil action, which cooperation shall include—

“(1) providing a full account to the claimant of all facts known to the applicant or cooperating individual, as the case may be, that are potentially relevant to the civil action;

“(2) furnishing all documents or other items potentially relevant to the civil action that are in the possession, custody, or control of the applicant or cooperating individual, as the case may be, wherever they are located; and

“(3)(A) in the case of a cooperating individual—

“(i) making himself or herself available for such interviews, depositions, or testimony in connection with the civil action as the claimant may reasonably require; and

“(ii) responding completely and truthfully, without making any attempt either falsely to protect or falsely to implicate any person or entity, and without intentionally withholding any potentially relevant information, to all questions asked by the claimant in interviews, depositions, trials, or any other court proceedings in connection with the civil action; or

“(B) in the case of an antitrust leniency applicant, using its best efforts to secure and facilitate from co-

operating individuals covered by the agreement the cooperation described in clauses (i) and (ii) and subparagraph (A).

“(c) TIMELINESS.—The court shall consider, in making the determination concerning satisfactory cooperation described in subsection (b), the timeliness of the applicant’s or cooperating individual’s cooperation with the claimant.

“(d) COOPERATION AFTER EXPIRATION OF STAY OR PROTECTIVE ORDER.—If the Antitrust Division does obtain a stay or protective order in a civil action based on conduct covered by an antitrust leniency agreement, once the stay or protective order, or a portion thereof, expires or is terminated, the antitrust leniency applicant and cooperating individuals shall provide without unreasonable delay any cooperation described in paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (b) that was prohibited by the expired or terminated stay or protective order, or the expired or terminated portion thereof, in order for the cooperation to be deemed satisfactory under such paragraphs.

“(e) CONTINUATION.—Nothing in this section shall be construed to modify, impair, or supersede the provisions of sections 4, 4A, and 4C of the Clayton Act [15 U.S.C. 15, 15a, 15c] relating to the recovery of costs of suit, including a reasonable attorney’s fee, and interest on damages, to the extent that such recovery is authorized by such sections.

“SEC. 214. RIGHTS, AUTHORITIES, AND LIABILITIES NOT AFFECTED.

“Nothing in this subtitle [subtitle A (§§ 211–215) of title II of Pub. L. 108–237, amending this section and sections 2 and 3 of this title and enacting this note] shall be construed to—

“(1) affect the rights of the Antitrust Division to seek a stay or protective order in a civil action based on conduct covered by an antitrust leniency agreement to prevent the cooperation described in section 213(b) of this subtitle from impairing or impeding the investigation or prosecution by the Antitrust Division of conduct covered by the agreement;

“(2) create any right to challenge any decision by the Antitrust Division with respect to an antitrust leniency agreement; or

“(3) affect, in any way, the joint and several liability of any party to a civil action described in section 213(a) of this subtitle, other than that of the antitrust leniency applicant and cooperating individuals as provided in section 213(a) of this subtitle.”

[Pub. L. 111–190, §6, June 9, 2010, 124 Stat. 1276, provided that: “The amendments made by section 1 [amending section 211 of Pub. L. 108–237, set out above] shall take effect immediately before June 22, 2010.”]

[Pub. L. 111–30, §3, June 19, 2009, 123 Stat. 1775, provided that: “The amendment made by section 2 [amending section 211(a) of Pub. L. 108–237, set out above] shall take effect immediately before June 22, 2009.”]

ANTITRUST MODERNIZATION COMMISSION

Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title I, subtitle D, Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1856, as amended by Pub. L. 110–6, §2, Feb. 26, 2007, 121 Stat. 61, provided that:

“SEC. 11051. SHORT TITLE.

“This subtitle may be cited as the ‘Antitrust Modernization Commission Act of 2002’.

“SEC. 11052. ESTABLISHMENT.

“There is established the Antitrust Modernization Commission (in this subtitle referred to as the ‘Commission’).

“SEC. 11053. DUTIES OF THE COMMISSION.

“The duties of the Commission are—

“(1) to examine whether the need exists to modernize the antitrust laws and to identify and study related issues;

“(2) to solicit views of all parties concerned with the operation of the antitrust laws;

“(3) to evaluate the advisability of proposals and current arrangements with respect to any issues so identified; and

“(4) to prepare and to submit to Congress and the President a report in accordance with section 11058.

“SEC. 11054. MEMBERSHIP.

“(a) NUMBER AND APPOINTMENT.—The Commission shall be composed of 12 members appointed as follows:

“(1) Four members, no more than 2 of whom shall be of the same political party, shall be appointed by the President. The President shall appoint members of the opposing party only on the recommendation of the leaders of Congress from that party.

“(2) Two members shall be appointed by the majority leader of the Senate.

“(3) Two members shall be appointed by the minority leader of the Senate.

“(4) Two members shall be appointed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives.

“(5) Two members shall be appointed by the minority leader of the House of Representatives.

“(b) INELIGIBILITY FOR APPOINTMENT.—Members of Congress shall be ineligible for appointment to the Commission.

“(c) TERM OF APPOINTMENT.—

“(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2), members of the Commission shall be appointed for the life of the Commission.

“(2) EARLY TERMINATION OF APPOINTMENT.—If a member of the Commission who is appointed to the Commission as—

“(A) an officer or employee of a government ceases to be an officer or employee of such government; or

“(B) an individual who is not an officer or employee of a government becomes an officer or employee of a government;

then such member shall cease to be a member of the Commission on the expiration of the 90-day period beginning on the date such member ceases to be such officer or employee of such government, or becomes an officer or employee of a government, as the case may be.

“(d) QUORUM.—Seven members of the Commission shall constitute a quorum, but a lesser number may conduct meetings.

“(e) APPOINTMENT DEADLINE.—Initial appointments under subsection (a) shall be made not later than 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 2, 2002].

“(f) MEETINGS.—The Commission shall meet at the call of the chairperson. The first meeting of the Commission shall be held not later than 30 days after the date on which all members of the Commission are first appointed under subsection (a) or funds are appropriated to carry out this subtitle, whichever occurs later.

“(g) VACANCY.—A vacancy on the Commission shall be filled in the same manner as the initial appointment is made.

“(h) CONSULTATION BEFORE APPOINTMENT.—Before appointing members of the Commission, the President, the majority and minority leaders of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and the minority leader of the House of Representatives shall consult with each other to ensure fair and equitable representation of various points of view in the Commission.

“(i) CHAIRPERSON; VICE CHAIRPERSON.—The President shall select the chairperson of the Commission from among its appointed members. The leaders of Congress from the opposing party of the President shall select the vice chairperson of the Commission from among its remaining members.

“SEC. 11055. COMPENSATION OF THE COMMISSION.

“(a) PAY.—

“(1) NONGOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES.—Each member of the Commission who is not otherwise employed by a government shall be entitled to receive the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay payable for

level IV of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5 United States Code, as in effect from time to time, for each day (including travel time) during which such member is engaged in the actual performance of duties of the Commission.

“(2) GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES.—A member of the Commission who is an officer or employee of a government shall serve without additional pay (or benefits in the nature of compensation) for service as a member of the Commission.

“(b) TRAVEL EXPENSES.—Members of the Commission shall receive travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in accordance with subchapter I of chapter 57 of title 5, United States Code.

“SEC. 11056. STAFF OF COMMISSION; EXPERTS AND CONSULTANTS.

“(a) STAFF.—

“(1) APPOINTMENT.—The chairperson of the Commission may, without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 of title 5 of the United States Code (relating to appointments in the competitive service), appoint and terminate an executive director and such other staff as are necessary to enable the Commission to perform its duties. The appointment of an executive director shall be subject to approval by the Commission.

“(2) COMPENSATION.—The chairperson of the Commission may fix the compensation of the executive director and other staff without regard to the provisions of chapter 51 and subchapter III of chapter 53 of title 5 of the United States Code (relating to classification of positions and General Schedule pay rates), except that the rate of pay for the executive director and other staff may not exceed the rate of basic pay payable for level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of title 5 United States Code, as in effect from time to time.

“(b) EXPERTS AND CONSULTANTS.—The Commission may procure temporary and intermittent services of experts and consultants in accordance with section 3109(b) of title 5, United States Code.

“SEC. 11057. POWERS OF THE COMMISSION.

“(a) HEARINGS AND MEETINGS.—The Commission, or a member of the Commission if authorized by the Commission, may hold such hearings, sit and act at such time and places, take such testimony, and receive such evidence, as the Commission considers to be appropriate. The Commission or a member of the Commission may administer oaths or affirmations to witnesses appearing before the Commission or such member.

“(b) OFFICIAL DATA.—The Commission may obtain directly from any executive agency (as defined in section 105 of title 5 of the United States Code) or court information necessary to enable it to carry out its duties under this subtitle. On the request of the chairperson of the Commission, and consistent with any other law, the head of an executive agency or of a Federal court shall provide such information to the Commission.

“(c) FACILITIES AND SUPPORT SERVICES.—The Administrator of General Services shall provide to the Commission on a reimbursable basis such facilities and support services as the Commission may request. On request of the Commission, the head of an executive agency may make any of the facilities or services of such agency available to the Commission, on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis, to assist the Commission in carrying out its duties under this subtitle.

“(d) EXPENDITURES AND CONTRACTS.—The Commission or, on authorization of the Commission, a member of the Commission may make expenditures and enter into contracts for the procurement of such supplies, services, and property as the Commission or such member considers to be appropriate for the purpose of carrying out the duties of the Commission. Such expenditures and contracts may be made only to such extent or in such amounts as are provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

“(e) MAILS.—The Commission may use the United States mails in the same manner and under the same

conditions as other departments and agencies of the United States.

“(f) GIFTS, BEQUESTS, AND DEVISES.—The Commission may accept, use, and dispose of gifts, bequests, or devises of services or property, both real and personal, for the purpose of aiding or facilitating the work of the Commission. Gifts, bequests, or devises of money and proceeds from sales of other property received as gifts, bequests, or devises shall be deposited in the Treasury and shall be available for disbursement upon order of the Commission.

“SEC. 11058. REPORT.

“Not later than 3 years after the first meeting of the Commission, the Commission shall submit to Congress and the President a report containing a detailed statement of the findings and conclusions of the Commission, together with recommendations for legislative or administrative action the Commission considers to be appropriate.

“SEC. 11059. TERMINATION OF COMMISSION.

“The Commission shall cease to exist 60 days after the date on which the report required by section 11058 is submitted.

“SEC. 11060. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

“There is authorized to be appropriated \$4,000,000 to carry out this subtitle.”

YEAR 2000 INFORMATION AND READINESS DISCLOSURE

Pub. L. 105–271, Oct. 19, 1998, 112 Stat. 2386, as amended by Pub. L. 107–273, div. C, title IV, §14102(e), Nov. 2, 2002, 116 Stat. 1922, known as the Year 2000 Information and Readiness Disclosure Act, provided for the free disclosure and exchange of information about computer processing problems, solutions, test practices and test results, and related matters in connection with the transition to the year 2000.

APPLICATION OF ANTITRUST LAWS TO AWARD OF NEED-BASED EDUCATIONAL AID

Pub. L. 107–72, §3, Nov. 20, 2001, 115 Stat. 648, provided that:

“(a) STUDY.—

“(1) IN GENERAL.—The Comptroller General shall conduct a study of the effect of the antitrust exemption on institutional student aid under section 568 of the Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 1 note) [Pub. L. 103–382, see below].

“(2) CONSULTATION.—The Comptroller General shall have final authority to determine the content of the study under paragraph (1), but in determining the content of the study, the Comptroller General shall consult with—

“(A) the institutions of higher education participating under the antitrust exemption under section 568 of the Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 1 note) (referred to in this Act [see Short Title of 2001 Amendment note above] as the ‘participating institutions’);

“(B) the Antitrust Division of the Department of Justice; and

“(C) other persons that the Comptroller General determines are appropriate.

“(3) MATTERS STUDIED.—

“(A) IN GENERAL.—The study under paragraph (1) shall—

“(i) examine the needs analysis methodologies used by participating institutions;

“(ii) identify trends in undergraduate costs of attendance and institutional undergraduate grant aid among participating institutions, including—

“(I) the percentage of first-year students receiving institutional grant aid;

“(II) the mean and median grant eligibility and institutional grant aid to first-year students; and

“(III) the mean and median parental and student contributions to undergraduate costs of at-

tendance for first year students receiving institutional grant aid;

“(iii) to the extent useful in determining the effect of the antitrust exemption under section 568 of the Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 1 note), examine—

“(I) comparison data, identified in clauses (i) and (ii), from institutions of higher education that do not participate under the antitrust exemption under section 568 of the Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 1 note); and

“(II) other baseline trend data from national benchmarks; and

“(iv) examine any other issues that the Comptroller General determines are appropriate, including other types of aid affected by section 568 of the Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 1 note).

“(B) ASSESSMENT.—

“(i) IN GENERAL.—The study under paragraph (1) shall assess what effect the antitrust exemption on institutional student aid has had on institutional undergraduate grant aid and parental contribution to undergraduate costs of attendance.

“(ii) CHANGES OVER TIME.—The assessment under clause (i) shall consider any changes in institutional undergraduate grant aid and parental contribution to undergraduate costs of attendance over time for institutions of higher education, including consideration of—

“(I) the time period prior to adoption of the consensus methodologies at participating institutions; and

“(II) the data examined pursuant to subparagraph (A)(iii).

“(b) REPORT.—

“(1) IN GENERAL.—Not later than September 30, 2006, the Comptroller General shall submit a report to the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate and the Committee on the Judiciary of the House of Representatives that contains the findings and conclusions of the Comptroller General regarding the matters studied under subsection (a).

“(2) IDENTIFYING INDIVIDUAL INSTITUTIONS.—The Comptroller General shall not identify an individual institution of higher education in information submitted in the report under paragraph (1) unless the information on the institution is available to the public.

“(c) RECORDKEEPING REQUIREMENT.—

“(1) IN GENERAL.—For the purpose of completing the study under subsection (a)(1), a participating institution shall—

“(A) collect and maintain for each academic year until the study under subsection (a)(1) is completed—

“(i) student-level data that is sufficient, in the judgment of the Comptroller General, to permit the analysis of expected family contributions, identified need, and undergraduate grant aid awards; and

“(ii) information on formulas used by the institution to determine need; and

“(B) submit the data and information under paragraph (1) to the Comptroller General at such time as the Comptroller General may reasonably require.

“(2) NON-PARTICIPATING INSTITUTIONS.—Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to require an institution of higher education that does not participate under the antitrust exemption under section 568 of the Improving America’s Schools Act of 1994 (15 U.S.C. 1 note) to collect and maintain data under this subsection.”

Pub. L. 103–382, title V, §568(a)–(d), Oct. 20, 1994, 108 Stat. 4060, 4061, as amended by Pub. L. 105–43, §2(a), Sept. 17, 1997, 111 Stat. 1140; Pub. L. 105–244, title I, §102(a)(3), Oct. 7, 1998, 112 Stat. 1618; Pub. L. 107–72, §2, Nov. 20, 2001, 115 Stat. 648; Pub. L. 110–327, §2, Sept. 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 3566, provided that:

“(a) EXEMPTION.—It shall not be unlawful under the antitrust laws for 2 or more institutions of higher education at which all students admitted are admitted on a need-blind basis, to agree or attempt to agree—

“(1) to award such students financial aid only on the basis of demonstrated financial need for such aid;

“(2) to use common principles of analysis for determining the need of such students for financial aid if the agreement to use such principles does not restrict financial aid officers at such institutions in their exercising independent professional judgment with respect to individual applicants for such financial aid;

“(3) to use a common aid application form for need-based financial aid for such students if the agreement to use such form does not restrict such institutions in their requesting from such students, or in their using, data in addition to the data requested on such form; or

“(4) to exchange through an independent third party, before awarding need-based financial aid to any of such students who is commonly admitted to the institutions of higher education involved, data submitted by the student so admitted, the student's family, or a financial institution on behalf of the student or the student's family relating to assets, liabilities, income, expenses, the number of family members, and the number of the student's siblings in college, if each of such institutions of higher education is permitted to retrieve such data only once with respect to the student.

“(b) LIMITATIONS.—Subsection (a) shall not apply with respect to—

“(1) any financial aid or assistance authorized by the Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.) [and 42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.]; or

“(2) any contract, combination, or conspiracy with respect to the amount or terms of any prospective financial aid award to a specific individual.

“(c) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section—

“(1) the term ‘alien’ has the meaning given such term in section 101(3) [101(a)(3)] of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(3) [1101(a)(3)]);

“(2) the term ‘antitrust laws’ has the meaning given such term in subsection (a) of the first section of the Clayton Act (15 U.S.C. 12(a)), except that such term includes section 5 of the Federal Trade Commission Act (15 U.S.C. 45) to the extent such section applies to unfair methods of competition;

“(3) the term ‘institution of higher education’ has the meaning given such term in section 101 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 [20 U.S.C. 1001];

“(4) the term ‘lawfully admitted for permanent residence’ has the meaning given such term in section 101(20) [101(a)(20)] of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(20) [1101(a)(20)]);

“(5) the term ‘national of the United States’ has the meaning given such term in section 101(22) [101(a)(22)] of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1101(22) [1101(a)(22)]);

“(6) the term ‘on a need-blind basis’ means without regard to the financial circumstances of the student involved or the student's family; and

“(7) the term ‘student’ means, with respect to an institution of higher education, a national of the United States or an alien admitted for permanent residence who is admitted to attend an undergraduate program at such institution on a full-time basis.

“(d) EXPIRATION.—Subsection (a) shall expire on September 30, 2015.”

[Pub. L. 105-43, §2(b), Sept. 17, 1997, 111 Stat. 1140, provided that: “The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending section 568(a)-(d) of Pub. L. 103-382, set out above] shall take effect immediately before September 30, 1997.”]

§ 2. Monopolizing trade a felony; penalty

Every person who shall monopolize, or attempt to monopolize, or combine or conspire with any other person or persons, to monopolize

any part of the trade or commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations, shall be deemed guilty of a felony, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding \$100,000,000 if a corporation, or, if any other person, \$1,000,000, or by imprisonment not exceeding 10 years, or by both said punishments, in the discretion of the court.

(July 2, 1890, ch. 647, §2, 26 Stat. 209; July 7, 1955, ch. 281, 69 Stat. 282; Pub. L. 93-528, §3, Dec. 21, 1974, 88 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 101-588, §4(b), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 2880; Pub. L. 108-237, title II, §215(b), June 22, 2004, 118 Stat. 668.)

AMENDMENTS

2004—Pub. L. 108-237 substituted “\$100,000,000” for “\$10,000,000”, “\$1,000,000” for “\$350,000”, and “10” for “three”.

1990—Pub. L. 101-588 substituted “\$10,000,000” for “one million dollars” and “\$350,000” for “one hundred thousand dollars”.

1974—Pub. L. 93-528 substituted “a felony, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding one million dollars if a corporation, or, if any other person, one hundred thousand dollars, or by imprisonment not exceeding three years” for “a misdemeanor, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding fifty thousand dollars, or by imprisonment not exceeding one year”.

1955—Act July 7, 1955, substituted “fifty thousand dollars” for “five thousand dollars”.

§ 3. Trusts in Territories or District of Columbia illegal; combination a felony

(a) Every contract, combination in form of trust or otherwise, or conspiracy, in restraint of trade or commerce in any Territory of the United States or of the District of Columbia, or in restraint of trade or commerce between any such Territory and another, or between any such Territory or Territories and any State or States or the District of Columbia, or with foreign nations, or between the District of Columbia and any State or States or foreign nations, is declared illegal. Every person who shall make any such contract or engage in any such combination or conspiracy, shall be deemed guilty of a felony, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding \$100,000,000 if a corporation, or, if any other person, \$1,000,000, or by imprisonment not exceeding 10 years, or both said punishments, in the discretion of the court.

(b) Every person who shall monopolize, or attempt to monopolize, or combine or conspire with any other person or persons, to monopolize any part of the trade or commerce in any Territory of the United States or of the District of Columbia, or between any such Territory and another, or between any such Territory or Territories and any State or States or the District of Columbia, or with foreign nations, or between the District of Columbia, and any State or States or foreign nations, shall be deemed guilty of a felony, and, on conviction thereof, shall be punished by fine not exceeding \$100,000,000 if a corporation, or, if any other person, \$1,000,000, or by imprisonment not exceeding 10 years, or by both said punishments, in the discretion of the court.

(July 2, 1890, ch. 647, §3, 26 Stat. 209; July 7, 1955, ch. 281, 69 Stat. 282; Pub. L. 93-528, §3, Dec. 21, 1974, 88 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 101-588, §4(c), Nov. 16,